DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 166 949 FL 010 005

AUTHOR	Johnson, Dora E.; And Others
TITLE	Languages of Sub-Saharan Africa. A Survey of Materials for the Study of the Uncommonly Taught Languages.
INSTITUTION	Center for Applied Linguistics, Arlington, Va.
SPONS AGENCY	Office of Education (DHEW), Washington, D.C.
PUB DATE	Aug 76
CONTRACT	300-75-0201
NOTE	94p.; Marginally legible due to small print
AVAILABLE FROM	Center for Applied Linguistics, 1611 North Kent Street, Arlington, Virginia 22209 ($3.95 each fascicle; complete set of 8, $26.50)
EDRS PRICE	MF-$0.83 HC-$4.67 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	Adult Education; *African Languages; Afrikaans; Afro Asiatic Languages; Bantu Languages; Dialects; *Dictionaries; Grammar; Indonesian Languages; *Instructional Materials; Language Classification; *Language Instruction; Language Variation; *Reading Materials; Second Language Learning; Somali; *Uncommonly Taught Languages
IDENTIFIERS	Interior African Languages; Khoisan; *Sub-Saharan African Languages; West African Languages

ABSTRACT

This is an annotated bibliography of basic tools of access for the study of the uncommonly taught languages of Sub-Saharan Africa. It is one of eight fascicles which constitute a revision of "A Provisional Survey of Materials for the Study of the Neglected Languages" (CAL 1969). The emphasis is on materials for the adult learner whose native language is English. Languages are grouped according to the following classifications: Germanic; Languages of Ethiopia and Somalia; Languages of West Africa; Bantu Languages; Khoisan; Languages of Interior Africa; and Malayo-Polynesian. Under each language heading, the items are arranged as follows: (1) teaching materials; (2) readers; (3) grammars; and (4) dictionaries. Annotations are descriptive rather than critical. Wherever possible each entry contains the following bibliographical information: author, title, place of publication, date and pagination. Reprints have been noted, and accompanying tapes and records listed where known. (Author/AMH)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

Languages of SUB-SAHARAN AFRICA

ED166949

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

Center for Applied Linguistics

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC) AND USERS OF THE ERIC SYSTEM."

A Survey of Materials for the Study of the Uncommonly Taught Languages

A Survey of Materials for the Study of the Uncommonly Taught Languages

Languages of

Sub-Saharan Africa

---

1 Western Europe
Pidgins and Creoles (European Based)
2 Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union
3 The Middle East and North Africa
4 South Asia
5 Eastern Asia
6 Sub-Saharan Africa
7 Southeast Asia and the Pacific
8 North, Central, and South America

Dora E. Johnson
Birgit A. Blass
Stephen R. Cahir
William W. Gage
William F. Hanks
Elizabeth Kimmell
Dorothy Rapp

CENTER FOR APPLIED LINGUISTICS

The research reported herein was performed pursuant to a contract with the Office of Education, U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare (No. OEC-300-75-0201) under the provisions of Title VI, Section 602, NDEA.

Library of Congress Catalog Card No.: 76-44594
ISBN: 87281-058-5

Copyright © 1976
By the Center for Applied Linguistics
1611 North Kent Street
Arlington, Virginia 22204

Printed in the U.S.A.

Preface

This annotated bibliography of basic tools of access for the study of the uncommonly-taught languages is a revision of A Provisional Survey of Materials for the Study of the Neglected Languages which the Center for Applied Linguistics published in 1969. All modern languages except standard English, French, German, Italian, Russian, and Spanish have in principle been included whenever adequate materials for studying them could be located.

The present edition was compiled in response to a consensus reached at the Kittamaqundi Conference on the Uncommonly-Taught Languages convened by the U.S. Office of Education in Columbia, Maryland September 29 - October 2, 1974.* Area specialists participating in the conference felt that the quantity of materials published in all areas since the appearance of the 1969 survey warranted a complete update of that edition.

The current survey is being published in eight fascicles, utilizing the same arrangement of languages and language groups as the earlier one within the following divisions: Western Europe/Pidgins and Creoles (European-based); Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union; The Middle East and North Africa; South Asia; Eastern Asia; Sub-Saharan Africa; Southeast Asia and the Pacific; North, Central and South America.

The primary emphasis continues to be on materials designed for use by the adult learner whose native language is English, although some materials of interest mainly to the teacher, the specialist and/or the textbook writer have been incorporated. Under grammars, texts have been added which require knowledge of modern linguistic terminology. Books in print and available commercially are included, as well as those out of print, forthcoming or of limited accessibility. On the other hand, some of the publications of limited accessibility appearing in the 1969 survey have been dropped, especially when they have been superseded by later publications which are more readily available.

In the case of languages for which there appear to be no adequate or recent texts in English, entries include older books, technical studies, and books in foreign languages. For languages not appearing in the former survey, both recent works and older textbooks have been included to give a more comprehensive overview of information available. Pre-1940 bilingual dictionaries are listed when they apparently constitute the sole or major source for the language, or when they have appeared as reprints.

The present survey is the result of contributions from many individuals. Dr. David DeCamp, the Center's Associate Director for International Programs and Professor of Linguistics, English and Education at the University of Texas, served as project director until June 30, 1976, at which time Dr. Anthony Robson assumed this responsibility as head of the Center's International Programs.

Generous assistance was given by our colleagues at the Center, especially Begay

*Papers presented at this conference were published by the Center for Applied Linguistics (Material Development Needs in the Uncommonly-taught Languages: Priorities for the Seventies, 1975).

Atkinson, Publications Director, and Diane Bartosh of the publications staff; Alice Eppink, Librarian; and members of the staff of the ERIC Clearinghouse on Languages and Linguistics. We also wish to express our gratitude to those scholars who reviewed our preliminary draft and made many valuable suggestions. Their names are listed in the appropriate fascicles. Thanks are also due the Library of Congress, including many staff members in the specialized reference sections of the Library. The Library allowed us access to its stacks, which greatly facilitated our work.

Our very special thanks go to Wilma Chase, Jean Lewis and Sonia Kundert, who typed the manuscript for publication.

At the end of each fascicle we are providing our readers with a form which we hope they will use to send us information about published or forthcoming basic tools of access which have not come to our attention and which may be included in a later edition of this collection.

Dora E. Johnson
Birgit A. Blass
Stephen R. Cahir
William W. Gage
William F. Hanks
Elizabeth Kimmell
Dorothy Rapp

August 1976

Introduction

In compiling the material for this annotated bibliography, the same general divisions have been followed as in the Sub-Saharan Africa section of the provisional edition (1969): Afrikaans, languages of Ethiopia and Somalia, languages of West Africa, Bantu languages, and languages of interior Africa and Madagascar. We have added, however, a small section on Khoisan languages. Berber languages and the varieties of Arabic spoken in Africa appear in the fascicle on the Middle East and North Africa, while European-based Pidgins and Creoles are listed in the fascicle on Western Europe/Pidgins and Creoles.

Although the policies of the African nations in general have encouraged the development of indigenous languages, there are still comparatively few good basic tools of access for the English-speaking adult learner. Work is being done on these languages by the Bureau of Languages in Accra, Ghana, the East African Literature Bureau in Nairobi, Kenya, and the Language Research Unit in Khartoum, Sudan. Some of the older institutions, such as the Institut Fondamentale d'Afrique Noire in Dakar, also continue to produce materials, grammatical descriptions et al. In Europe there is some activity, particularly in France at Afrique et Langage in Lyon and Société pour l'Etude des Langues Africaines (SELAF) in Paris. In the United States work on African languages is carried out at various institutions, notably Indiana University and the University of California at Los Angeles. Many publications are listed in the bibliography of the African Studies Association, and the Negro Universities Press (Westport, CT) is reprinting older books.

This survey does not reflect the large volume of reading materials being produced at a rapid rate in East Africa and Nigeria, nor does it include the small handbooks produced for civil servants--e.g., in Ghana. It does include partial studies on languages even when a basic textbook is not available; and where new languages have been added, older publications and manuscripts have sometimes been listed. Unfortunately, it was not possible to include the large number of manuscripts deposited in various libraries and institutions such as Afrique et Langage in Lyon and the School of Oriental and African Studies in London.

Closely related languages or dialects have been grouped together, rather than listing them separately. Welmers has been followed in the spelling of names of languages, as listed in Current Trends in Linguistics, Vol. 7 (Mouton, 1971).

There is no complete bibliography of current publications on the languages of Africa. For older publications, the best are still those compiled by Ruth Jones: West Africa: General, Ethnography/Sociology, Linguistics, East Africa: General, Ethnography/Sociology, Linguistics, North-east Africa: General, Ethnography/Sociology, Linguistics, and South-east Central Africa and Madagascar: General, Ethnography/Sociology, Linguistics (London, England: International African Institute, 1958-1961. 4 vols.). However, this material is obviously dated, and many of the publications are now out of print.

Information on bibliographic sources not included in this fascicle may be found in Troike, Rudolph C. and Crawford Feagin Stone, Bibliography of Bibliographies of the Languages of the World. Arlington, VA: Center for Applied Linguistics (forthcoming).

Under each language heading, the items are arranged as follows:

Teaching Materials (basic, intermediate, and advanced courses, audio-visual courses, radio recordings, character texts, and introductions to the writing system). Information about intermediate and advanced materials is, in general, given when such materials are members of a series which contain a basic course.

Readers (general, literary, history, social science, folklore, newspaper and school readers).

Grammars (reference grammars, linguistic grammars, and partial descriptions).

Dictionaries (comprehensive, concise and student dictionaries and glossaries).

Annotations are descriptive, rather than critical, and follow a condensed format. Wherever possible each entry contains the following bibliographical information: author, title, place of publication, publisher, date and pagination. Reprints have been noted, and accompanying tapes and records listed where known. Materials available through the ERIC Documentation Service are also included.

The reader should note than unless otherwise indicated:

1. Textbooks are for use with an instructor.
2. Textbooks are designed for the adult English speaker.
3. Standard or generally accepted dialects are used.
4. Standard orthography is utilized throughout.
5. Descriptive information about pronunciation is provided when skill emphasis indicates pronunciation drills.
6. Vocabulary lists are not noted if there is a cumulative glossary at the end of the book.
7. Dictionaries are intended for the speaker of English.

Abbreviations appearing in brackets after the annotations identify materials produced under U.S. Government auspices or by the American Council of Learned Societies.

The preliminary draft was based on a list compiled at Indiana University. Carleton T. Hodge reviewed the entire fascicle.

The files and early drafts were prepared by Stephen Cahir, William Hanks and Birgit Blass. Annotations were done by Alexandra Roceric-Cernea, Elizabeth Kimmell and Dora Johnson, who also served as editor. William Gage provided the information utilized in the overall design of the list.

Abbreviations

ACLS American Council of Learned Societies.

Books published under ACLS auspices are available through Spoken Language Services, P.O. Box 783, Ithaca, New York 14850, which is the sole distributor for these publications.

AID Agency for International Development, U.S. Department of State, Washington, D.C. 20523.

BIA Bureau of Indian Affairs, U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C. 20240.

DLI Defense Language Institute, U.S. Department of Defense, Monterey, California 93940.

ED Educational Document. The numbers that follow refer to entries in Resources in Education (RIE), which is published monthly by the Educational Resources Information Center (ERIC). Documents may be ordered directly from:

ERIC Document Reproduction Service (ERDS), Computer Microfilm International Corporation, P.O. Box 190, Arlington, Virginia 22210.

Or, for further information, contact:

The ERIC Clearinghouse on Languages and Linguistics, 1611 North Kent Street, Arlington, Virginia 22209.

ED numbers listed which do not have MF (microfiche only) or Resumé only (i.e. summary of document, cost, and where obtainable) are available in microfiche and hard copy.

FL Foreign Language. The number assigned by the Clearinghouse on Languages and Linguistics to the documents it enters into the ERIC system. Each document is assigned an ED number when it is published in RIE.

FSI Foreign Service Institute, U.S. Department of State, Washington, D.C. 20520.

IJAL International Journal of American Linguistics, University of Chicago Press, 5801 Ellis Avenue, Chicago, Illinois 60637.

NDEA National Defense Education Act, Office of Education, U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, Washington, D.C. 20202.

PC Peace Corps (now ACTION), Washington, D.C. 20525.

SIL Summer Institute of Linguistics. The International Headquarters is

currently located in Huntington Beach, California 92648.

USAFI Armed Forces Institute, U.S. Department of Defense, Washington, D.C. 20301.

Table of Contents

PREFACE iii

INTRODUCTION v

ABBREVIATIONS vii

GERMANIC
Afrikaans 1

ETHIOPIA AND SOMALIA
Amharic 2
Galla 4
Kefa-Mocha 4
Somali 5
Tigre 6
Tigrinya 6

WEST AFRICA
Abua 6
Ahizi 7
Akan 7
Angas 8
Anufo 8
Anyi 8
Balanta 8
Bassa 8
Baule (Baoulé) 9
Bekwarra (Bekworra) 9
Birom 9
Bisa (Busa) 9
Black Bobo 10
Bulom (Sherbro) 10
Dagari 10
Dagomba 10
Dan (Gio) 10
Dogon 11
Duka 11
Dyola 11
Edo (Bini) 11
Efik 11
Engenni 12
Ewe-Fon 12
Fulani 13
Gã 15
Ga'anda (Gabin) 15

Gbari	15
Gisiga	16
Grebo	16
Guang (Gonja)	16
Gurma	16
Hausa	16
Idoma	19
Igbirra	19
Igbo	19
Ijaw	20
Ika	21
Izi	21
Jukun	21
Kanuri	21
Kapsiki	22
Kasena	22
Konkomba	22
Kpelle (Guerzé)	22
Kusal(e) (Kusasi)	22
Kweni	22
Lefana	22
Lela	23
Lobi	23
Limba	23
Loko	23
Loma	23
Mambila	23
Mandara	23
Mandekan (Bambara)	23
Mano	25
Margi	25
Mbembe	25
Mbum	25
Mende	25
Moba	26
Moré (Mossi)	26
Nakanse (Gurenne)	27
Nupe	27
Pajade (Badjaaranké)	27
Red Bobo	27
Ron	28
Sembla	28
Senari	28
Serer	28
Sisala	28
Songhai (Djerma)	28
Soninke	29
Suppire	29
Susu	29
Tamprusi	29
Temne	29
Tera	30
Tiv	30
Tura	31
Vagala	31
Vai	31
Wolof	31
Yom	32
Yoruba	32

BANTU
Bamum 33
Bangi 33
Bemba 34
Bwa 34
Chokwe 34
shiChopi 35
Duala 35
Fang-Bulu 36
Fe'fe' 37
Ganda 37
Gusii 38
Kamba 38
Kikuyu 38
Kongo 39
Kpa 40
Kuanyama (Ovambo) 40
Kwangali 41
ekiLega 41
Lozi 41
Luba 41
Luhya 42
Lunda 42
Luyana 42
Makonde 42
Makua 42
[Ki]Mbundu (Ndongo) 43
[U]Mbundu 43
Mongo 43
chiMpoto 44
Nande 44
Ndumu 44
Ngala 44
Ngombe 45
Ngwe 45
chiNsenga 45
Nyaneka 45
Nyanja 45
Nyoro 46
Rundi 47
Rwanda 47
chiSena 48
Shaka (Chagga) 48
Shambala 48
Shona 48
Sotho, Pedi (Northern Sotho) 49
Sotho, (Southern) Sotho 50
Sotho, Tswana 51
Sukuma 51
Swahili 52
Teke 56
Tikar 56
chiTonga 56
Tsonga 56
Tumbuka 57
kinyaTuru 58
Venda 58
[Ki]Yao 58
Zulu-Xhosa (Nguni),
Fanagalo 58

Zulu-Xhosa (Nguni), (continued)
Ndebele 58
Swati (Swazi) 58
Xhosa 59
Zulu 60

KHOISAN
Hottentot 61
Bushman 62

INTERIOR AFRICA
Acoli 62
Bagirmi 63
Banda 63
Bari 63
Berti 63
Bongo 63
Dagara 63
Dangaleat 63
Dinka 63
Fur 64
Gbeya 64
Gula 64
Kara 64
Kenga 64
Kotoko 64
Lotuxo 64
Lugbara 65
Mamvu 65
Mangbetu 65
Maasai 65
Moru 65
Mundu 65
Murle 66
Musei 66
Nandi (Kalenjin) 66
Ndogo 66
Ndunga 66
Nubian 66
Nuer 67
Sango (Ngbandi) 67
Sara-Gambai 68
Sara-Majingai 68
Sara-Mbay 68
Shilluk 68
Teda (Tuda) 69
Teso 69
Tumak 69
Uduk 69
Zande 69

MALAYO-POLYNESIAN
Malagasy 70

INDEX 72

Sub-Saharan Africa

Germanic

AFRIKAANS

TEACHING MATERIALS

Botha, Marthinus C. and J.F. Burger. Maskew Miller's Practical Afrikaans for English-speaking Students. 2nd ed. Cape Town, South Africa: Maskew Miller, 194-. vii, 307 pp. [O.P.]

For self-instructional purposes and designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 26 lessons, grammar is explained in traditional terms and illustrated in unrelated sentences and narratives. There are translation (into Afrikaans), reading, completion, and sentence construction drills. Pronunciation information and drills in Lessons 1-3.

Burgers, M.P.O. Teach Yourself Afrikaans. London, England: English Universities Press, 1957. 245 pp.

For self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech and reading practice. In chapters 9-32, grammar is explained in traditional terms and illustrated in unrelated sentences. Translation exercises. Chapters 1-8 contain outlines of the phonology and the standard orthography. Chapters 33-35 include reading selections and information about letter writing. Instructions on the use of the material in the introduction. Appended are a key to the exercises and an Afrikaans-English glossary.

Daleboudt, H. Afrikaans for Immigrants. Capetown, South Africa: Cape Times, 1966. 140 pp.

Groenewald, Pieter W.J. Learn to Speak Afrikaans: A New Method Based on 1,000 Words. 4th ed. Pietermaritzburg, South Africa: Shuter and Shooter, 1949. 145 pp.

For self-instructional purposes and designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 24 lessons, grammar is illustrated in unrelated sentences, dialogues, and narratives, and explained in structural terms. There are response, translation, completion, transformation, and combination drills. Pronunciation drills consist of marking stress. Appendices include prepositions, Afrikaans-English, English-Afrikaans glossaries, everyday expressions, recommended reading, and test exercises.

Merwe, H.J.J.M. van der. An Introduction to Afrikaans. Cape Town, South Africa: A.A. Balkema, 1951. 143 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech, reading and writing practice. Reading practice is to be supplied by simple readers to be begun as soon as pronunciation has been mastered. Grammar is explained in traditional terms, sometimes inductively, and illustrated in unrelated sentences. There are pronunciation, sentence construction, two-way translation, transformation, completion, parsing, and additive drills. Transcription also used in the section on pronunciation. English-Afrikaans glossary.

Potgieter, Dirk J. and A. Geldenhuys. Afrikaans for English Speaking Students. 5th ed. Cape Town, South Africa: Juta, 1954-60. 2 vols. [1st pub. 1941]

Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 36 lessons, grammar is illustrated by giving examples and explained in traditional terms. Each lesson contains narratives, accompanied by glossaries. There are sentence construction, sentence correction, translation, parsing, completion, and transformation drills. Appendices contain idioms and proverbs, Anglicisms, revisionary tests, subjects for business letters, and subjects for essays.

Riordan, J. et al. Afrikaans: Lumku Language Laboratory Course. Lumku, South Africa: South African Philips Pty. Ltd., 9 vols., n.d.

Teach Yourself Afrikaans. (Series of Africa Languages, No. 1) 7th ed. Stellenbosch, South Africa: Tegnidisc, 1967. 2 vols. Records.

For self-instructional purposes and designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 26 lessons of Vol. I, grammar is illustrated in dialogues and narratives and explained in structural terms. There are translation, response, and transformation drills. Vocabulary list in each lesson. Vol. II contains two-way glossaries.

Tromp, J. Afrikaans for All. Leiden, Netherlands: E.J. Brill, 1952. x, 174 pp.

Wiid, Jacobus C. de Beer. The Essentials of Afrikaans. Cape Town, South Africa: Juta, 1949. 253 pp.

For self-instructional purposes and designed to give speech and reading practice. May be covered in six months. In the 36 lessons, grammar is explained in traditional terms and illustrated in narratives and letters. There are reading, two-way translation, response, completion, substitution, and sentence construction drills. An introductory chapter contains summaries of the main sentence constructions. English-Afrikaans, Afrikaans-English glossaries.

GRAMMARS

De Villiers, Meyer. Afrikaanse klankleer, fonetiek, fonologie en woordbou. 4th rev. ed. Capetown, South Africa: Balkema, 1967. 196 pp.

Intended for the advanced student. Discussion is somewhat theoretical.

Le Roux, T.H. and P. de Villiers Pienaar. Afrikaanse Fonetiek. Johannesburg, South Africa: Juta, 1927. xi, 240 pp.

A comprehensive discussion and description of the phonology of Afrikaans. Part I is given over to the description which ranges from individual sounds to intonation and rhythm. Part II is a series of phonetic transcriptions of various selections. These are given in the standard orthography as well, as is the case with the examples in Part I. Bibliography. Index.

Lint, J.W. van and A.L. Malan. Afrikaans Grammar for Teaching and Self Study. 11th ed. Capetown, South Africa: Juta, 1946.

Pienaar, P. de V. and A.G. Hooper. An Afrikaans-English Phonetic Reader. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1948. x, 93 pp.

Van der Merwe, H.J.J.M. An Introduction to Afrikaans. Cape Town, South Africa: Balkema, 1951. 143 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Afrikaanse Woordelys en Spelrëels: Word List and Spelling Rules. 7th rev. ed. Cape Town, South Africa: Nasionale Boekhandel Beperk, 1965.

Bosman, Daniël B., I.W. van der Merwe and L.W. Hiemstra. Tweetalige Woordeboek: Afrikaans-Engels, Engels-Afrikaans. 4th ed. Johannesburg, South Africa: Kaapstaad Bloemfontein, 1962. 2 vols.

Two comprehensive dictionaries intended for the speaker of Afrikaans. In the English-Afrikaans volume, the entry is immediately followed by the Afrikaans gloss except for homonyms where the parts of speech are indicated. In the Afrikaans-English volume, important grammatical forms are included and abbreviations serve to define the area of meaning. Illustrative sentences. The Afrikaans material is in the standard orthography modified to indicate stress.

Kritzinger, M.S.B. and H.A. Steyn. Skoolwoordeboek Afrikaans-Engels, Engels-Afrikaans. 21st rev. ed. Pretoria, 1970. 714 pp.

_____ et al. Groot Woordeboek: Afrikaans-Engels, Engels-Afrikaans. 9th rev. ed. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. Van Schaik, 1965. 2 vols. 1340 pp.

A comprehensive dictionary intended for the speaker of Afrikaans. The standard orthographies are used for both languages modified to indicate stress. In the Afrikaans-English section, the Afrikaans inflections and conjugations are provided. In the English-Afrikaans section, abbreviations occasionally indicate the parts of speech. Illustrative sentences.

Le Roux, T.H. and P. de Villiers Pienaar. Uitspraakwoordeboek van Afrikaans. 2nd ed. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. Van Schaik, 1950. xxxiv, 240 pp.

A pronouncing dictionary. The entries, which include declensions, conjugations, and compounds are written in both the standard orthography and transcription. An introductory chapter contains an outline of Afrikaans phonology.

Terblanche, H.J. New Practical Dictionary: English-Afrikaans, Afrikaans-English. 5th ed. Johannesburg, South Africa: Afrikaanse Pers-Boekhandel, 1966. vi, 883 pp.

Intended for the speakers of both languages. Concentrates on the spoken and written language of everyday life. The English-Afrikaans section contains approximately 29,000 entries and the Afrikaans-English section approximately 31,000 entries. The standard orthographies are used for both languages modified to indicate stress. Inflections and conjugations are provided for Afrikaans. Two lists contain common abbreviations.

Ethiopia & Somalia

AMHARIC

TEACHING MATERIALS

Barton, Donald K. and Tuddese Begene. Fundamentals of Amharic. Rev. ed. Salt Lake City, UT: University of Utah, 1967. 3 vols. Tapes.

Intended to prepare the student to reach an advanced level of proficiency. Designed to give speech and reading practice. Unit I (Lessons 1-5) parallels the grammatical subject matter in Amharic and English (University of Utah, 1966), to provide volunteers with some insights into the problems of teaching English as a foreign language. Dialogues and narratives serve as a base for structured conversation. There are pronunciation, recognition, repetition, response, transformation and completion drills. Grammar is explained in structural terms. Each lesson contains vocabulary for mastery and supplemental lists. The material is in transcription except in Vol. III, part II, where the Amharic syllabary is introduced. The texts in part parallel material in Vol. I and also include many well-known Ethiopian folktales and stories. Amharic-English, English-Amharic glossaries in Vols. I and II. [PC]

Fisher, Milton C. A Guide to Learning Amharic. Rev. ed. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: Cooperative Language Institute of Ethiopia, 1969. 2 vols. Tapes.

This six-step course was prepared for use by missionaries in the Cooperative Language Institute. The lessons are to be coupled with five to six hours of study daily with an informant, classroom drill and instruction, private review, use of tapes, and free conversation. There are 180 lessons. Each is arranged to allow for listening, conversation, memorization of specific texts, reading, writing, question drill, grammar study, and development of speech skills. Text in Amharic and English.

Frydenlund, Marie and Kristine Svensen. Amharic for beginners. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: Norwegian Lutheran Mission Language School, 1967. 184 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech and reading practice. Lessons are graded in ascending order of difficulty. Grammar is explained in partly traditional, and partly structural terms. Pattern drills and exercises. Vocabulary lists in lessons. Phonetic transcription also used throughout. Key to exercises.

Haas, Richard E. and Hailu Berhane. An Introduction

to Amharic Syllabary, With Exercises and Reading. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: Peace Corps, 1969. 25 pp. [PC]

Leslau, Wolf. An Amharic Conversation Book. Wiesbaden, W. Germany: O. Harrassowitz, 1965. 169 pp.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. The purpose of the text is to present dialogues dealing with everyday life in Ethiopia, and to furnish additional reading material. The 30 dialogues consist mainly of short sentences with questions and answers, accompanied by the English translation. The Amharic text requires a knowledge of the main features of the language.

_____. Amharic Textbook. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 1968. xviii, 675 pp.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 50 lessons, every fifth of which is a review, grammar is explained in structural terms with numerous examples and illustrated in narratives. There are completion, translation, substitution, transformation, response, and parsing drills. In Lessons 16-34, there is a dramatized dialogue. An introductory chapter outlines the phonology, in articulatory terms, and the Amharic script which is used throughout, and supplemented by a transcription in Lessons 1-10. The language represented is that of the province of Shoa and Addis Ababa. Appended are tables of verb forms, pronouns, and stems, indices of grammatical features and of Amharic function words, and English-Amharic, Amharic-English glossaries. [NDEA]

Obolensky, Serge et al. Amharic Basic Course, Units 1-60. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Department of State, 1964-65. 2 vols. Tapes. [Available from GPO] [ED 012 446/447]

Designed to give speech practice. Narratives and reading practice (Vol. II) serve as a base for structured conversation. New grammar and vocabulary are illustrated in basic sentences and dialogues with buildups. There are substitution, transformation, and question and response drills. Grammar is explained in structural terms. Lesson One contains an outline of the phonology. Pronunciation drills (repetition) in Lessons 1-3. Amharic material is in transcription with diacritics indicating stress, juncture, and intonation (Lessons 1-60). The Reader is in the Amharic script. Verb charts and glossary. [FSI]

Prewith, Michael and Legasse Ajabi. Language Training Books. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: Peace Corps, 1968. 133 pp. Tapes.

Self-instructional course.

Semere Woldegabir. Amharic for foreigners. Rev. ed. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: Berhanena Salem, H.S.I. Press, 1969. 171 pp. [1st pub. 1966]

READERS

Eadie, J.I. An Amharic Reader. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1924. 278 pp.

For the intermediate student. The material appears in the Amharic script and in an English translation. References are made to Armbruster's Initia Amharica, Part I: Grammar in the notes.

Leslau, Wolf. Intermediate Amharic Cultural Reader. Final Report. Los Angeles, CA: University of California at Los Angeles, 1973. 357 pp. [Manuscript] [ED 107 102 MF only]

Thirty-nine texts intended to provide material for the intermediate-level student and to introduce the student to the cultural and social life of Ethiopia. Amharic-English glossary. [NDEA]

Ullendorff, Edward. An Amharic Chrestomathy: Introduction, Grammatical Tables, Texts, Amharic-English Glossary. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1965. viii, 141 pp.

For self-instructional purposes. The readings illustrate a variety of styles of modern Amharic literature. Bibliography.

GRAMMARS

Abr[illegible]m, Roy Clive. The Principles of Amharic. (Institute of African Studies. Occasional publications, no. 9) Ibadan, Nigeria: University of Ibadan, 1968. vi, 245 pp.

A reference grammar with the Amharic material in transcription. Appended are a grammar index and conversational sentences.

Armbruster, C.H. Initia Amharica - An Introduction to Spoken Amharic. Part I: Grammar. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1908. xxiii, 398 pp.

A reference grammar also intended for pedagogical purposes. Traditional in approach. In three parts: phonology, where the reader is introduced to the Amharic characters, punctuation, pronunciation, etc.; accidence (noun, pronoun, verb, negative conjugation, conjunction, etc.); and syntax (number, gender, case, use of adjective, article, verb, the sentence, etc.). Examples follow brief descriptions of rules governing the grammar, most of which are in the Amharic script and transliteration, with translations. About one-third of the book is an appendix of the principal parts of verbs occurring in the three parts. Paragraphs consecutively numbered and cross-referenced. Dialectal variations marked. Index. (See also Armbruster, Initia Amharica, Parts II & III under DICTIONARIES.)

Bender, Marvin Lionel. "Amharic verb-morphology: A Generative Approach." Ph.D. Diss., Univ. of Texas at Austin, 1968. 74 pp.

Cohen, Marcel R. Traité de langue amharique (Abyssinie). 2nd ed. (Travaux et Mémoires, No. 24) Paris, France: Institut d'Ethnologie, 1970. xx, 487 pp. [1st pub. 1936]

Descriptive grammar, traditional in approach. Most of the book deals with the parts of speech. Chapters on orthography, pronunciation, and syntax. Chapter on syntax also includes linguistic and stylistic analysis of various texts. Examples in script, phonetic transcription and in translation. Appended are an index of concepts (in French), and of Amharic phonemes; an index of grammatical elements, and of words (in Amharic). Bibliography.

Dawkins, C.H. The Fundamentals of Amharic. Rev. ed. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: Sudan Interior Mission, 1969. ii, 138 pp. [1st ed. 1960]

Pedagogical grammar, designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. For use by the beginning and the advanced student. Not arranged as a graded course of study; each grammatical subject is treated

separately and as a whole under its own heading. Part I deals with phonology. Part II is on the verb. Part III treats the non-verbal parts of speech. Part IV is on the sentence, and Part V, on idiom and usage. Numerous illustrative sentences. Suggested course of study provided for the beginner. Index.

Guidi, Ignazio. Grammatica elementare della lingua amarica. 8th ed. Rome, Italy: Instituto Per l'oriente, 1952. viii, 84 pp.

Hebo, Agostino da. Grammatica Amarica. Asmara, Ethiopia, 1955.

Pedagogical grammar, with exercises, tables, and vocabularies. Numerous examples.

Leslau, Wolf. An Amharic Reference Grammar. Los Angeles, CA: University of California at Los Angeles, Dept. of Near Eastern and African Languages, 1969. 478 pp. [ED 036 793 MF only]

Reference grammar, structural in approach. Designed to prepare the student for speaking and reading Amharic. Deals with orthography, phonology, morphology, and syntax. Numerous examples follow items described, in Amharic script and transcription. Paragraphs consecutively numbered; cross referencing. [NDEA]

DICTIONARIES

Amsalu Aklilu and G.P. Mosback. English-Amharic dictionary. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: Oxford University Press, 1973. 311 pp.

Intended primarily for Amharic-speaking secondary school students as a beginning dictionary. Entries contain 1-3 word definitions.

Armbruster, C.H. Initia Amharica - An Introduction to Spoken Amharic. Parts II & III: English to Amharic, Amharic to English vocabulary with phrases. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1908.

In the Amharic script and in transcription. (See also Author, Initia Amharica, Part I, under GRAMMARS.)

Bevilacqua, A. Nuovo Vocabolario italiano-amarico. Rome, Italy, 1937.

Leslau, Wolf. An Amharic Dictionary: Amharic-English, English-Amharic. Berkeley, CA: University of California, 1964. 211 pp.

Intended for the speakers of both languages. The first section has approximately 2500 entries and the second has approximately 4000 entries. The Amharic material is in the Amharic script. [PC]

_____, comp. Amharic-English and English-Amharic vocabulary. Wiesbaden, W. Germany: O. Harrassowitz, 1965. 169 pp. [PC]

_____. A Basic Amharic Dictionary. Amharic-English and English-Amharic. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 525 pp. Forthcoming. [NDEA]

_____, comp. English-Amharic context dictionary. Wiesbaden, W. Germany: O. Harrassowitz, 1973. xviii, 1503 pp. [1st pub. as An English-Amharic Dictionary of Everyday Usage. Los Angeles, 1968.] [ED 012 044/045]

Assumes knowledge of Amharic script and the essentials of Amharic grammar. Entries are taken from educated colloquial Amharic, and presented in contextual sentences. [NDEA]

GALLA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Moreno, Martino M. Grammatica teorico-pratica della lingua Galla, con exercizi. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1964. 256 pp. [Reprint of Rome, 1939 ed.]

Traditional pedagogical grammar designed to give speech practice. Numerous examples follow items described. Exercises are of the translation, conjugation and memorization types. Vocabulary lists in exercise section.

READERS

Moreno, Martino, M. Favole e rime Galla: testi raccolti, editi, tradotti e annotati. (Studi storici e linguistici, 1) Rome, Italy: Tipografia del Senato, 1935. 204 pp.

The text appears in Galla and in Italian. Grammar and culture notes.

GRAMMARS

Bender, Marvin Lionel, and Mulugeta Eteffa. "Galla." In Language in Ethiopia, ed. by Marvin Lionel Bender et al. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1975. pp. 130-48.

Hodson, Arnold W. and Craven H. Walker. An Elementary and Practical Grammar of the Galla or Oromo Language. London, England: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, 1922. 272 pp.

Pedagogical grammar of the colloquial language intended for the beginner. Traditional in approach. Brief description of phonetics and intonation. The rest of the book deals with the parts of speech. Numerous examples follow items described. Appended are an index of Galla verbs, an English-Galla vocabulary, a Bible excerpt and four stories. Texts also in Galla orthography; roman and phonetic transcription used throughout.

Launhardt, Johannes. Guide to Learning the Oromo Language. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: The Author, 1973.

Pedagogical grammar.

DICTIONARIES

Foot, Edwin C. A Galla-English, English-Galla Dictionary. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1968. viii, 118 pp. [Reprint of Cambridge, 1913 ed.]

Approximately 7000 entries include abbreviations indicating parts of speech and some illustrative phrases.

KEFA-MOCHA

DICTIONARIES

Leslau, Wolf. A dictionary of Moča (southwestern Ethiopia). (University of California publications in linguistics, v. 18) Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 1959. 83 pp.

Mocha-English and English-Mocha dictionary. Mocha-English section includes grammatical information and illustrative phrases. References and cross-references.

Index of loan words. Map.

SOMALI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Ahmed, Shirre Jama and Charles Kozoll. An Elementary Somali Drill Book. New York, NY: Peace Corps Training Program, Teachers College, Columbia University, 1966. iii, 160 pp.

In the 12 lessons, the Somali basic sentences, exercises, and pronunciation drills are written in transcription. Appended are a brief sociolinguistic sketch, a section on pronunciation, and a bibliography. [PC]

Bell, C.R.V. The Somali Language. New York, NY: Longmans, Green and Co., 1968. xi, 185 pp. [1st pub. 1953]

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Grammar (traditional in approach) and vocabulary (in lists) are illustrated in translation exercises (into Somali). An introductory chapter contains an outline of the phonology. Somali material, written in transcription, is based on the speech of central tribes. Appendices include verb charts and key to exercises. English-Somali, Somali-English glossaries.

Black, Paul, Dale Dillinger and J. Joseph Pia. Beginning in Somali. East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University, African Studies and Area Center, 1964. 3 vols. Tapes.

Designed to give speech practice. In the 19 lessons, including one review, grammar is illustrated in dialogues with buildups and explained in structural terms. Dialogues serve as a base for structured conversation. The drill book contains dialogues without buildups, drills for each lesson beginning with Lesson 10, and the scripts for the accompanying tapes. There are pronunciation, repetition, substitution, response, and transformation drills. Somali material is in transcription with diacritics to indicate pitch. [NDEA]

Pia, J. Joseph, Paul D. Black and M.I. Samater. Beginning in Somali. Rev. ed. Syracuse, NY: Syracuse University, Program of Eastern African Studies, 1966. xxiii, 380 pp. [ED 010 884]

Designed to give speech practice. Microwave format with 100 cycles, each composed of a short dialogue, grammar and cultural notes, drills (repetition, question-response, substitution, transformation), and structured conversation. Outline of the phonology in the introduction. Vocabulary lists. Somali material is presented in phonemic transcription. Sociolinguistic sketch of Somalia is included. Appendices provide additional narratives, dialogues, and five supplementary cycles introducing construction terms. [PC/NDEA]

READERS

Galaal, Muuse Hagji Ismaa'iil. Hhimad soomaali. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1956. xi, 150 pp.

For self-instructional purposes. Assumes mastery of C.R.V. Bell's The Somali Language or the equivalent. The 22 texts, excerpts from unpublished oral Somali literature consisting of stories, proverbs, and alliterative poems, are in a modified form of Roman script with diacritics indicating tone. Following the texts are 22 vocabulary lists which include culture notes and information about vocabulary usage. An introductory chapter outlines the phonology. The dialect represented is that spoken in the central area of the part of Somaliland formerly under British administration.

Pia, J.J. and R.D. Molitor. Reading in Somali: an Elementary Cultural Reader. Syracuse, NY: Syracuse University, Dept. of Linguistics, 1969. 2 vols. [ED 036 422/423]

Designed to introduce the student to expository prose and Somali culture. To be used concurrently with a course in spoken Somali. Vol. I, the Reader, contains a primer and eight lessons with texts, vocabulary, notes, and comprehension questions. Vol. II, Pony and Glossary, contains literal and free translations of the texts. The glossary includes the vocabulary of these texts as well as that of Beginning in Somali. The orthography is a pedagogical one. [NDEA]

GRAMMARS

Andrzejewski, B.W. The Declension of Somali Nouns. London, England: School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, 1964. 149 pp.

For the specialist. Based on Northern Somali. Somali material in transcription.

Armstrong, Lilias Eveline. The Phonetic Structure of Somali. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1964. [Reprint of Berlin, 1934 ed.] 46 pp.

Kirk, John W.C. A Grammar of the Somali Language with Examples in Prose and Verse and an Account of the Yibir and Midgan Dialects. Farnsborough, Westmead, England: Gregg International, 1969. xvi, 216 pp. [Reprint of 1905 ed.]

Traditional reference grammar.

Pia, J. Joseph. Somali Sounds and Inflections. Ann Arbor, MI: University Microfilms, 1969. 109 pp.

This study treats segmental phonology, some suprasegmentals and the inflectional morphology of the Burao subdialect of the Isaq dialect. One section treats phonology, the other morphology. The inflectional morphology is stated in transformational generative terms.

Warsama, Solomon and Roy Clive Abraham. The Principles of Somali. n.p.: Authors, 1951. 481 pp.

A descriptive grammar, intended for pedagogical purposes but can be used as a reference book. Brief descriptions and rules of grammatical categories and their functions (gender, tones, double compound-adjectives, tenses, the passive) are given, followed by numerous examples with translations. Sections consecutively numbered and cross-referenced. Phonemic transcription used throughout. Index.

Žolkovskij, Aleksandr K. Sintaksis Somali. Moscow, USSR: Nauka, 1971. 265 pp.

Transformational grammar. Examples in phonetic transcription. Bibliography.

DICTIONARIES

Abraham, Roy Clive. English-Somali Dictionary. London, England: University of London Press, 1967. 208 pp.

This dictionary uses cross-references for compactness. English words are cross-referenced to English words; English words and phrases are cross-referenced to the Somali equivalent.

_____. Somali-English Dictionary. London, England: University of London Press, 1964. xviii, 332 pp.

The approximately 8000 entries are in transcription with tone indicated by numbers. Nouns are listed with their definite articles. Verbs, listed in the present tense, are followed by an index-number referring to the section in the grammatical outline (pp. 262-332) where the conjugation of the verb in question can be found. Illustrative sentences.

TIGRE

TEACHING MATERIALS

Camperio, Manfredo. Manuale Pratico della Lingua Tigrè con due dizionarietti, Italiano-Tigrè e Tigrè-Italiano. Milan, Italy: U. Hoepli, 1936. 159 pp.

Part I is a short outline of Tigre phonetics and grammar. Part II contains useful phrases and dialogues in Italian, translated into Tigre. Part III is a short Italian-Tigre dictionary, and Part IV is a Tigre-Italian dictionary. Roman transcription used throughout.

GRAMMARS

Leslau, Wolf. A Short Grammar of Tigre. (Offprint Series, 18) New Haven, CT: American Oriental Society, 1945. 66 pp.

_____. Supplementary Observations on Tigre Grammar. New Haven, CT: American Oriental Society, 1948.

Palmer, Frank R. The Morphology of the Tigre Noun. (London Oriental Series, v. 13) London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1962. 96 pp.

Based on original research. Concerns the entire morphology of the noun and morphologically and syntactically related class of adjective. Major emphasis is on derivatives. In the Tigre-English glossary forms are grouped according to the syllabic and vocalic shape of the singular form.

DICTIONARIES

Littman, Enno and Maria Höfner. Wörterbuch der Tigrè-Sprache: Tigrè-Deutsch-Englisch. Wiesbaden, W. Germany: Franz Steiner Verlag, 1962. iv, 744 pp.

TIGRINYA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Conti Rossini, Carlo. Lingua tigrina: 1. Elementi grammaticali ed esercizi. Milan, Italy: Mondadori, 1940. 278 pp.

Traditional textbook intended for beginners. In Part I the parts of speech are described and illustrated by many examples. Exercises. Part II contains Tigrinya texts, followed by vocabulary notes. Part III contains lists of verbal flexions. Roman transcription used throughout.

GRAMMARS

Bender, Marvin Lionel, Hailu Fulass and Roger Cowley. "Tigrinya." In Language in Ethiopia, ed. by Marvin Lionel Bender et al. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1975. pp. 107-19.

Leonessa, Mauro da. Grammatica analitica della lingua tigray. Rome, Italy: Tip. Poliglotta Vaticana, 1928. xii, 294 pp.

Leslau, Wolf. Documents tigrigna (Ethiopien septentrional): Grammaire et textes. (Société de linguistique, Collection linguistique, 48) Paris, France: C. Klincksieck, 1941. xv, 388 pp.

Descriptive grammar. Deals with phonology, parts of speech, and contains one chapter on syntax. Texts include interlinear literal translations followed by approximate translations. Phonemic transcription used throughout.

Pam, Martin David. "Tigrinya phonology." Ph.D. Diss., The City University of New York, 1973. 148 pp.

For the specialist. The study is an investigation of the major phonological processes in Tigrinya using the method of generative phonology.

Praetorius, Franz. Grammatik der Tigriñasprache in Abessinien; Hauptsächlich in der Gegend von Aksum und Adoa. Mit einer Textbeilage. Hildesheim, W. Germany: Georg Olms Verlag, 1974. vii, 372 pp. [Reprint of 1871 ed.]

Historical in orientation. Part I is on phonetics and intonation. Part II describes the parts of speech. Part III is on syntax. Tigrinya orthography used throughout. Appended are texts.

DICTIONARIES

Bassano, Francesco de. Vocabolario tigray-italiano e repertorio italiano-tigray. Rome, Italy: Casa editrice italiana di C. de Luigi, 1918. 1322 pp.

Comprehensive dictionary. Entries also in Roman transcription and listed by word rather than by root. Parts of speech, levels of usage, illustrative phrases. Italian-Tigrinya finder list.

Cimino, A. Vocabolario italiano-tigrai e tigrai-italiano. Asmara, Ethiopia: Tipografia della Missione Svedese, 1904. xiv, 338 pp.

Coulbeaux, P.S. and J. Schreiber. Dictionnaire de la langue tigrai. (Sprachenkommission. Schriften, 6) Vienna, Austria: Alfred Hölder, 1915. 504 pp.

West Africa

ABUA

READERS

Gardner, Ian and Amelia Gardner. Aselemi Adibel adinya itugha onu Abuan. Ibadan, Nigeria: IAS and Port Har-

court: Ministry of Education, 1971. 128 pp.

AHIZI

GRAMMARS

Herault, G. L'Aĭzi; esquisse phonologique et enquête lexicale. (Documents linguistiques, 20) Abidjan, Ivory Coast: Université d'Abidjan, Institut de Linguistique Appliquée, 1971. 126 pp.
The dictionary is primarily an ethnological dictionary; entries listed by category. Many illustrative sentences. French-Ahizi finder list.

AKAN

TEACHING MATERIALS

Bellon, Immanuel. Twi Lessons for Beginners, Including a Grammatical Guide and Numerous Idioms and Phrases. Rev. ed. Accra, Ghana: Presbyterian Book Depot, 1972. xv, 76 pp. [Reprint of 1963 ed., 1st pub. 1911]
Designed to give speech practice. Part I contains 21 lessons with limited grammatical information, translation exercises, and vocabulary lists. Part II contains idioms and phrases. Twi material is in transcription with occasional tone markings. The introduction includes a list of sounds and tonal information.

Berry, Jack and Agnes Akosua Aidoo. An Introduction to Akan. Evanston, IL: Northwestern University, 1975. 336 pp. [FL 007 523]
Designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 20 units, grammar is illustrated in conversations with buildups and pattern practice drills with translations. Grammar notes, with cross-references, in structural terms. Vocabulary listed according to grammatical category. Appendices include notes on the verb in primary and secondary intonation and certain conjunctions. English-Akan glossary. [NDEA]

Denteh, A. Crakye. Spoken Twi (Asante) for Non-Twi Beginners. Accra-North, Ghana: Pointer Limited, 1974. 68 pp. [1st pub. Legon, University of Ghana, 1971.]
Designed to give speech practice. In the 64 lessons, grammar is introduced in dialogues and explained in brief notes. There are pattern practice and response exercises. [PC]

Keelson, K.K. and A. Crakye Denteh. Spoken Fante for Non-Fante Beginners. Accra-North, Ghana: Pointer Limited, 1974. 79 pp.
Designed to give speech practice. In the 64 lessons, grammar is introduced in dialogues and explained in brief notes. There are response and pattern practice exercises. [PC]

Rapp, E.L. An Introduction to Twi. Twi ne Emiresi kasa nhyemmu. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1936. 119 pp. [O.P.]
Twenty lessons based on the Akropong dialect which represents the written language. Part I contains sentences (with their English translation) illustrating grammar; Part II, sentences (for drill) illustrating tone; Part III, narratives. Verb tables are appended.

Redden, James E. et al. Twi Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1963. iii, 224 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO.] [ED 030 120 MF only]
Designed to give speech practice. In the 20 units, grammar is illustrated in dialogues, explained in structural terms, and included in repetition, substitution and transformation drills. An introductory chapter outlines the phonology. Unit One consists of 48 repetition drills of pairs of words distinguished by tone or consonant and vowel differences that often cause difficulty for English speakers. Vocabulary is introduced in dialogues with buildups and usage is explained in notes. This manual uses Ashanti Twi. It is written in transcription with diacritics to indicate tone. Glossary. [FSI/NDEA]

Stewart, John M. Drills for the indicative active tenses of the Asante verb. Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1969. 29 pp. [Mimeo.]

GRAMMARS

Balmer, William T. and F.C.F. Grant. A Grammar of the Fante-Akan Language. London, England: Atlantic Press, 1929. 172 pp.

Bartels, Francis L. and J.A. Annobil. Mfantse nkasafua dwumadzi. A Fante grammar of function. 13th ed. Cape Coast, Ghana: Methodist Book Depot, 1967. 182 pp.

Boadi, Lawrence. "The syntax of the Twi verb." Ph.D. Diss., University of London, 1966.

Christaller, Johann G. A Grammar of the Asante and Fante Language, Called Tsi [Chwee, Twi]: Based on the Akuapem Dialect, with Reference to the Other (Akan and Fante) Dialects. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1964. xxiv, 203 pp. [Reprint of Basel, 1875 ed.]
A pedagogical grammar, traditional in approach. Introduction provides a survey of the languages and dialects of the Gold Coast. Part I is an outline of phonology in articulatory terms. In part II, the parts of speech are described. The organization of the syntax in part III is: simple sentences, compound sentences, and manifold compound sentences. Numerous examples follow items described. These items are consecutively numbered, permitting cross-referencing. The 1854 orthography is used. Appendices cover orthography, prosody, and the comparison of leading dialects.

Schachter, Paul and Victoria Fromkin. A Phonology of Akan: Akuapem, Asante and Fante. Los Angeles, CA: University of California, 1968. 268 pp. [ED 022 189]
A technical description of the basic forms of words and how they relate to the spoken forms of the three dialects. Deals with segment structure, sequence structure, general phonological rules, and the finite verb. Modelled within framework of generative phonology as developed by Chomsky and Halle. [NDEA]

Ward, Ida C. The Pronunciation of Twi. Cambridge, England: W. Heffer and Sons, 1939. 23 pp. Records.
Designed to give speech practice. The phonology of Twi is outlined in articulatory terms. The vowels are explained in terms of cardinal vowels. There are repetition drills, some of which are contrastive, on words, sentences, and dialogues. The Twi material is in the standard orthography. Lines are used to indicate tones.

Welmers, William E. A Descriptive Grammar of Fanti.

(Language Dissertation No. 39) Baltimore, MD: Linguistic Society of America, 1946. 78 pp.

A linguistic grammar, intended for the specialist. Structural in approach. The four chapters cover the phonemes, morphemes, syntactic elements and syntax of Fanti. Numerous examples with translations follow items described. Appended are a few texts with approximate translations. The dialect analyzed is that of the town of Anumabo. Phonemic transcription used throughout.

The Writing of Twi. (Asante, Twi Spelling). Accra, Ghana: Scottish Mission Book Depot, 1955. 16 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Berry, Jack. English, Twi, Asante, Fante Dictionary. London, England: Macmillan, 1960. 146 pp.

An English index to Christaller's work.

Christaller, J.G. Dictionary of the Asante and Fante Language, Called Tshi (Twi). 2nd ed. rev. Basel, Switzerland: Basel Evangelical Missionary Society, 1933. xxxii, 607 pp.

A concise dictionary based on the Akuapem dialect. Arrangement is alphabetical according to the order of the initial consonants. Similar words, compounds, derivatives, and occasionally synonyms are placed together. Entries include parts of speech, illustrative phrases and sentences, and references to the literature for further illustrations of usage. Dialectal words and loanwords are marked. The Introductory chapter includes description of the language, its setting, and its dialects. Appended are lists of gold weights and proper names.

ANGAS

GRAMMARS

Burquest, Donald A. A preliminary study of Angas phonology. (Studies in Nigerian Languages, 1) Zaria and Kano, Nigeria: Institute of Linguistics and Centre for the Study of Nigerian Languages, 1971. 52 pp. [Also in MF: Language Data, African Series, 1. Santa Ana, CA: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1971.]

For the specialist.

Foulkes, H.D. Angass Manual; Grammar and Vocabulary. London, England: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1915. xviii, 313 pp.

Traditional reference grammar. Also aims to show similarities of Angas with Hausa. Examples follow items described, often in text-form. The Angas-English vocabulary also contains cultural information.

ANUFO

GRAMMARS

Stanford, Ron and Lyn Stanford. Collected field reports on the phonology and grammar of Chakosi. (Collected Language Notes, No. 11) Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1970. v, 70 pp.

Contains a provisional statement, an outline of grammatical structure, samples of text material and word lists. Texts are analyzed with interlinear literal translations.

DICTIONARIES

Krass, A.C. A dictionary of the Chokosi language. (Local Studies Series, No. 4) Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1970. 88 pp.

Anufo-English dictionary. Entries listed according to the English alphabet. In cases where there are identical spellings of the same word, precedence is given to the word with the high tone. Entries include grammatical information and illustrative phrases.

_____. English-Chokosi dictionary. (Local Studies Series, No. 5) Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, forthcoming.

ANYI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Language guide (Nzema edition). 2nd rev. ed. Accra, Ghana: Bureau of Ghana Languages, 1967. 48 pp. [1st pub. 1961]

Welman, Charles Wellesley. A Preliminary Study of the Nzima Language. London, England: The Crown agents for the colonies, 1926. 113 pp.

Intended as a general introduction to the language. Deals with phonetics, intonation, and morphology. Chapter of topical vocabularies (English-Nzima). Also included is information on kinship terms. Chapter on Nzima phrases, proverbs, personal names, etc. Final chapter on the relationship to the Akan languages. Phonetic transcription also used throughout.

BALANTA

GRAMMARS

N'Diaye-Correard, Geneviève. Études fca ou balante (dialecte ganja). (Bibliothèque de la SELAF, 17) Paris, France: Société pour l'étude des languages africaines, 1970. 155 pp.

Structural study. The first part contains phonological description, as well as morphology and syntax, defined in terms of classes. Fca-French vocabulary given is listed by Fca radicals. The second part includes texts in morphological transcription, with literal interlinear translations, and approximate translations. Includes summary in English, French, German, Spanish, and Russian.

Quintino, Fernando Rosado. "Algumas notas sobre a a gramática balanta." Boletim Cultural da Guiné Portuguesa (Bissau, Guiné Portuguesa) 6:21.1-52 (1951).

Wilson, W.A.A. "Outline of the Balanta language." African Language Studies 2.139-68 (1961).

BASSA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Devlin, Edward G. et al. Beginning Kru: A Course for Speakers of English. Prelim. ed. San Francisco, CA: San Francisco State College Liberian Language Development Project, 1968. 464 pp. [PC]

Sharp, Allen et al. Beginning Bassa: A Course for

Speakers of English. Rev. ed. San Francisco, CA: San Francisco State College, 1967. xiv, 416 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Each of the 30 lessons contains a dialogue, a vocabulary list, grammar notes and drills, cultural material, and suggestions for conversation. Every sixth lesson is a review. Pronunciation information and drills in early lessons. The Bassa material is in transcription. Suggestions for individual study in the field. Bassa-English glossary. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Rickard, David T. Kru grammar (a preliminary study). Monrovia, Liberia: Printed by the Dept. of Literacy, Work and Literature Production of the United Methodist Church, 1970.

DICTIONARIES

Hobley, J.M. Bassa-English and English-Bassa Dictionary (Bassa/Liberia). London, England: Frank Cass and Co., forthcoming.

BAULE (BAOULÉ)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Carteron, Michel. Étude de la langue baoulé. Bocanda, Côte d'Ivoire, 1972. 8 vols.

Intended for secondary school students. Designed to give speech, reading and writing practice. Lessons include traditional grammatical explanations, vocabulary lists, and exercises.

Day, Richard R. and Albert B. Saraka. An Introduction to Spoken Baoulé. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1968. 395 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Microwave format. Part I contains an outline of phonology and repetition drills. Part II contains 15 cycles on greetings. In the 223 cycles of part III, grammar and vocabulary is introduced in repetition drills on words, sentences, and dialogues which serve as a base for structured conversation. Grammatical explanations are in structural terms. Part IV contains texts with accompanying comprehension questions. The Baule material is in transcription. Appended are topically arranged vocabulary lists and a Baule-French-English glossary. Text also in French. [PC]

Hiba, Madelaine et al. Cours élémentaire de Baoulé. Washington, DC: Peace Corps, 1965. 44 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. In the 21 units, Baule material is written in transcription. Grammatical structure is illustrated in dialogues without buildups. There are repetition, response, and substitution drills. Directions are given on the use of each section of a unit. [PC]

Kouamé, Kouamé and Mary Griffen. Baule Text. Hanover, NH: Dartmouth College Peace Corps Training Center, 1967. 210 pp.

Introductory text designed on the microwave format. Contains 120 microwave cycles. Translations, instructions, and the occasional grammar notes are given in French. The Baule material is presented in phonemic transcription. Little information on pronunciation.

Walker, Kaye et al. Beginning Dyabo, A Course for Speakers of English. San Francisco, CA: San Francisco State College Liberian Language Research Project, 1968. 300 pp. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Efimbra, Georges. Manuel de baolé. Paris, France: Fernand Nathan, 1952.

Grass, Marcel. Essai pour une phonologie du baule. (Bulletin de la SELAF, 2) Paris, France: Société pour l'étude des langues africaines, 1967. 50 pp.

For the specialist.

DICTIONARIES

Lexique Français-Baoulé. Ivory Coast: Mission Catholique, 1965. 297 pp.

Intended for the student of Baule. The dialect of Bocanda is represented. The entries, approximately 4500, include reference to parts of speech, illustrative sentences, and proverbs.

BEKWARRA (BEKWORRA)

GRAMMARS

Stanford, Ron. "The Bekwarra language of Nigeria - a grammatical description." Ph.D. Diss., School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, 1967. 326 pp.

BIROM

READERS

Bouquiaux, Luc. Textes birom. (Nigéria septentrional). Avec traduction et commentaire. (Fac. de Philosophie et Lettres de l'Université de Liège, Fasc., 186) Paris, France: Les Belles Lettres, 1970. 416 pp.

Introduction to the language and style of texts. The 29 texts are accompanied by a literal translation of each paragraph, followed by a summary. Explanations of ethnography, motives, themes, etc. provided. Indices explain the characters, places and objects in texts with Birom translations.

GRAMMARS

Bouquiaux, Luc. La Langue Birom (Nigeria septentrional): Phonologie, Morphologie, Syntaxe. (Fac. de Philosophie et Lettres de l'Université de Liège, fasc. 185) Paris, France: Les Belles Lettres, 1970. 520 pp.

Descriptive grammar, on the whole intended for the specialist. Introduction contains general information on the language (dialects, geography, etc.). Part I describes the phonology. Part II deals with grammar. Part III is on derivation and composition. Parts IV and V describe expansion, and Part VI, the proposition. Numerous examples, in phonetic transcription, follow items described. Appended are an index of subjects, and an index of texts. Maps. Bibliography.

BISA (BUSA)

GRAMMARS

Prost, André. La langue Bisa: grammaire et diction-

naire. (Études Voltaïques, Mémoires, 1) Ouagadougou, Upper Volta: Centre IFAN, 1950. 198 pp.

Part I is a short descriptive grammar utilizing a structural approach but traditional terminology. The author covers a broad outline from phonology to forms of style. Examples follow descriptions, often in paradigmatic form. Transcription is geared towards enabling the reader to pronounce the language. Part II is a Bisa-French dictionary. The dialect used is that of the east, with vocabulary items which are different in other dialects listed and identified as to source.

BLACK BOBO

TEACHING MATERIALS

Sanon, Anselme and Mary Lynn Morse. Peace Corps Bobo Lesson Material. Washington, DC: U.S. Peace Corps, 1967. 76 pp.

Introductory text in Bobo Fing, designed on the microwave format. An introduction provides a brief sketch of the language and culture, includes notes on pronunciation. Cycles 1-5 contain tone recognition drills. Cycles 6-45 are microwave cycles, with grammar notes. The Bobo material is presented in transcription. The introduction, notes, and translations are in French. A preliminary section is a revised version of the introduction and early cycles, in English. [PC]

READERS

Morse, Mary Lynn A. "Two Languages of the Upper Volta: Linguistic Studies of the Black Bobo and Samago Languages." Ph.D. Diss., Columbia University, 1967.

BULOM (SHERBRO)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Sumner, A.T. A Handbook of the Sherbro Language. London, England: Crown agents for the Government of Sierra Leone, 1921. xii, 132 pp. [O.P.]

Designed to give speech and reading practice. Forty-three lessons with grammatical explanations in traditional terms, vocabulary lists and translation exercises. Ten narratives accompanied by notes. Sherbro-English, English-Sherbro glossaries.

GRAMMARS

Rogers, Henry E. The phonology and morphology of Sherbro. Ann Arbor, MI: University Microfilms, 1967. 185 pp.

Stratificational description dealing with the lower three strata of Sherbro: hypophonology, phonology, and morphology, with a sketch of lexology.

DICTIONARIES

Pichl, W.J. Sherbro-English Dictionary. Pittsburgh, PA: Duquesne University Press, 1967. x, 153 pp.

The approximately 3000 entries are in the transcription used in the Hobatok Che Rubani with additional diacritics. Tone is indicated for every word, and the noun class for every noun. Derived words are listed under the root or the stem. Entries include illustrative sentences and cultural information. Included is a guide to pronunciation.

_____. Sherbro-English and English-Sherbro vocabulary. Freetown, Sierra Leone, 1963. 2 vols. [Mimeo.]

DAGARI

GRAMMARS

Kennedy, Jack. The Phonology of Dagaari. Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1966. 57 pp.

A descriptive study. Phonemes are presented in 11 sections. Section 12 is on tonemes. Appended is a text with interlinear literal translations.

DAGOMBA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Al-Hassan, Abudulai and A. Crakye Denteh. Spoken Dagbani for Non-Dagbani Beginners. Accra-North, Ghana: Pointer Limited, 1974. 96 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Fifty graded lessons containing dialogues, grammar notes, and drills. [PC]

Language guide (Dagbani edition). 2nd rev. ed. Accra, Ghana: Bureau of Ghana Languages, 1968. [1st pub. 1961]

GRAMMARS

Shirer, W.L. Dagbane grammar. Tamale, Ghana: Assemblies of God Mission, 1939.

Wilson, William André Auquier. "Verbal Sequences and Case Markers in Dagbani." Ph.D. Diss., University of Texas at Austin, 1970. 170 pp.

Applies theory of semantic relationships (Fillmore, 1968) to verbal sequences in Dagbani.

DICTIONARIES

Blair, H.A. Dagomba (Dagbane) Dictionary and Grammar. N.p., n.d. 151 pp.

DAN (GIO)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Doneux, Jean and Joseph Mahan. Exercices de langue Dan (Côte d'Ivoire). (Documents, No. 4) Lyon, France: Afrique et Langage, n.d. [197-]. iv, 85 pp.

Forty-six lessons of pronunciation, tone, and grammatical drills. Brief explanations precede each set of drills.

Griffes, Kenneth E. A Start in Gio. Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1959. xvii, 170 pp. [NDEA]

_____ and William E. Welmers. Gio: Structural Studies and Pedagogical Materials. Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1960. 170 pp. Tapes.

Designed to give speech practice. The materials represent the first part of a projected course. The English sentences used to elicit types of grammatical constructions are presented in the left-hand column and in the right-hand column appears the Gio material elicited, in transcription. The type of grammatical

construction is indicated in the heading. Emphasis is on tone in the early lessons. Introductory chapters also sketch structural problems in the Mande languages and pedagogical techniques. The latter part of the book contains five folktales and two dialogues. [NDEA]

GRAMMARS

Bearth, Thomas and Hugo Zemp. "The Phonology of Dan (Santa)." Journal of African Languages 6:1.9-29 (1967).

DOGON

DICTIONARIES

Calame-Griaule, Geneviève. Dictionnaire dogon, dialecte tɔ̀ro: langue et civilisation. (Langues et littératures de l'Afrique noire, 4) Paris, France: C. Klincksieck, 1968. xlii, 332 pp.

Brief introduction to the phonology and grammatical structures of the language. Dogon-French dictionary, and French-Dogon glossary. Entries in first section contain ethnological information with illustrative phrases. Levels of usage indicated.

DUKA

GRAMMARS

Bender-Samuel, John, Donna Skitch and Esther Cressman. Duka Sentence, Clause and Phrase. (Studies in Nigerian Linguistics, no. 3) Zaria, Nigeria: Institute of Linguistics, 1973. vii, 160 pp.

For the specialist. Transformational in approach.

DYOLA

GRAMMARS

Sapir, J. David. A Grammar of Diola Fogny: A Language Spoken in the Basse-Casamance Region of Senegal. (West African language monographs, 3) London, England: Cambridge University Press, 1965. xiii, 129 pp.

A descriptive grammar intended for the specialist. Structural in approach. Brief general introduction to the Diola language. Part I deals with phonology. Part II covers morphology and syntax. In this section, there is a brief grammatical sketch of the language. Other subjects covered are: derivation, pronouns, adjectives, relationals, extended noun and seminominal phrases, and a listing of sentence types. Diola dialect map. Appended are an analyzed text with interlinear and approximate translations, a morpheme index, and a bibliography.

Weiss, Henri. Grammaire et lexique Diola du Fogny (Casamance). Paris, France: Larose, 1940. 168 pp.

Part I is a short outline of grammar for the beginner, and a list of elementary phrases with French translations. Part II is a French-Dyola vocabulary. Appended is a list with names of trees and flowers.

DICTIONARIES

Wintz, Édouard. Dictionnaire Français-Dyola et Dyola-Français, précédé d'un essai de grammaire. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1968. x, 280 pp. [Reprint of 1909 ed.]

EDO (BINI)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Awobuluyi, A. Oladele and P. Igharo. Peace Corps Bini Language Program. Washington, DC: Peace Corps, 1964. 46 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. In the 13 lessons, grammar is illustrated in dialogues without buildups and explained in structural terms. Vocabulary list in each lesson. There are exercises in sentence construction (from tables) and one translation drill. The Bini material is in R. Wescott's Bini orthography with tones indicated by diacritics. Lesson One includes an outline of the phonology. [PC]

Dunn, Ernest F. An Introduction to Bini. (African Language Monograph No. 9) East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University, African Studies Center, 1968. xvi, 224 pp.

For use with an instructor and designed to give speech practice. Micro-wave approach. In the 127 cycles grammar is introduced in structural terms followed by drills leading up to actual conversation. Appended are conversations, folktales, a Bini-English glossary and a reference grammar. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Wescott, Roger W. Bini Grammar. East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University, African Studies Center, 1963. 321 pp. [ED 003 870/871/872]

Descriptive grammar; on the whole intended for the specialist. Part I (almost half the book) is given over to phonology of Bini. Analysis basically structural in approach. Part II deals with morphology. Included is discussion of grammatical procedure and the form classes of affixes and roots. Part III: lexemics. Grammatical categories discussed are lexeme grades and lexeme classes. Numerous illustrative tables included and referred to throughout. Examples with translations are included in the discussion. The problems of orthography are set out at the beginning of the book. [NDEA]

DICTIONARIES

Butcher, Hugh Louis Montague. An Elementary Dictionary of the Benin Language. Benin City, Nigeria: Church Missionary Society, 1936. 116 pp.

Melzian, Hans J. Concise Dictionary of the Bini Language of Southern Nigeria. London, England: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner and Co., 1937. xviii, 232 pp.

Entries include etymological references. The Bini material is in the writing system indicated in Memorandum on a Practical Orthography for African Languages, with tone indications.

Munro, David A. English-Edo Wordlist, an Index to Melzian's Bini-English Dictionary. (Occasional Publication No. 7) Ibadan, Nigeria: Institute of African Studies, University of Ibadan, 1967. xi, 89 pp.

EFIK

TEACHING MATERIALS

Cook, Thomas L. The Pronunciation of Efik for Speakers of English. Bloomington, IN: African Studies Program,

and Intensive Language Training Center, 1969. xxviii, 204 pp. Tapes.

Intended also for non-Efik speakers. Designed to give pronunciation practice, but also designed to be a linguistic contribution to the language. Contains an introduction to the language. Each phonological component (including tone) is described and followed by drills. Section on Efik orthography. Appendices include summary of rules, key to exercises, and bibliography. Charts.

Welmers, William E. Efik. (Occasional Publication No. 11) Ibadan, Nigeria: Institute of African Studies, University of Ibadan, 1968. xii, 217 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Twelve lessons of grammatical explanations followed by numerous pronunciation, tone, and grammar drills. Transcription modified from accepted Efik spelling. Efik-English, English-Efik vocabularies.

READERS

Akpanyuŋ, O.A. A Study of Efik for Schools and Colleges. London, England: Thomas Nelson & Sons, 1962. viii, 127 pp.

A pedagogical grammar which can also be used for reference purposes. Descriptions in Efik with some English. Structural in approach, but utilizes non-technical terminology. Part I is a brief section on the phonology of the language; Part II deals with the forms and functions of words (morphology); and Part III discusses sentences and clauses (syntax). This section also includes a chapter on folk-tales, poems, proverbs and idioms. Examples with no translations follow items described. Exercises follow each lesson. Official orthography used throughout. English-Efik glossary of grammatical terms.

GRAMMARS

Kaufman, Elaine M. "Ibibio grammar." Ph.D. Diss., University of California at Berkeley, 1968. 438 pp.

Structural study. Discusses grammar in terms of the structure of words, that of noun and verb phrases, and that of sentences.

Simmons, Donald C. "Ibibio verb morphology." African Studies 16.1-19 (1957).

Ward, Ida C. The Phonetic and Tonal Structure of Efik. Cambridge, England: W. Heffer and Sons, 1933. xiv, 186 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Adams, R.F.G. Efik-English, English-Efik Dictionary. 3rd ed. rev. Liverpool, England: Philip, Son and Nephew Ltd., 1952-53. 2 vols.

Intended for the speakers of both languages. In the Efik-English section, the approximately 4000 entries are in the standard orthography with tones indicated by diacritics and arranged according to the roots. Homophones are listed as subentries according to the parts of speech. In the English-Efik section, the approximately 6000 entries represent the Efik spoken in Calabar. Parts of speech indicated. Illustrative sentences. Some brief grammatical information in the introduction.

Goldie, Hugh. Dictionary of the Efik Language. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1964. 776 pp. [Reprint of 1874 ed.]

Efik-English, English-Efik dictionary.

Kaufman, Elaine M. Ibibio dictionary. Stanford, CA: Stanford University, African Language and Area Center, 1972. 635 pp. [ED 067 960]

Intended for field workers, linguists, and anthropologists. Approximately 4,500 entries. Entries include derivatives as sub-entries, with levels of usage, and illustrative phrases and sentences. [NDEA]

ENGENNI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Clevenger, Joycelyn and Elaine Thomas. Reading and writing Engenni. Huntington Beach, CA: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1966. 64 pp.

GRAMMARS

Thomas, Elaine. "A grammatical description of the Engenni language." Ph.D. Diss., University of London, 1969. 258 pp.

EWE-FON

TEACHING MATERIALS

Ansre, Gilbert. Conversational Ewe. Prelim. ed. Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, 1968. 43 pp.

Ten lessons with conversations.

Berry, J. The Pronunciation of Ewe. Cambridge, England: W. Heffer and Sons, 1951. 28 pp. Records.

Intended as an introduction to the beginner. Brief descriptions followed by examples. Texts of the records are appended.

Guillet, Gérard. Initiation à la tonalité et la grammaire de la langue fon. Cotonou, Dahomey, 1962. vi, 170 pp.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. Twenty-one lessons based on tones and grammatical structures (mostly morphology) with numerous exercises. Following the lessons are 21 conversations, simple and progressive. The last section of the book contains general rules governing Fon tones, and a summary.

Johnson, Gabriel K. Mina Basic Course. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, African Studies Program, 1967. 174 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. French is used as the language of instruction. In the 20 lessons, grammar is explained in structural terms and illustrated in dialogues with buildups and narratives which serve as a base for structured conversation. Culture notes. The Mina material is in transcription. Pronunciation information in preliminary section. [PC]

_____ and Katherine Felten. Fon Short Basic Course. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, African Studies Program, 1968. 380 pp. [Manuscript]

Designed to give speech practice. French is used as the language of instruction. Each of the 20 lessons contains dialogues with buildups, vocabulary, culture and grammar notes, and one or more brief narratives

with comprehension questions. The first lesson includes some drills and suggestions for conversation. The Fon material is in transcription. No information on pronunciation. [PC]

Segbe, Gabriel and Robert Pazzi. Initiation à la langue Ewe-Mina. Eve-Gẽgbe meyiyi-kpɔ. Méthode-nature pour étrangers. Lomé, Togo: The Authors, 1967. 126 pp.

Twenty-nine lessons designed to give speech practice. Lessons contain conversations, narratives, and grammatical explanations. Vocabulary limited to 365 items which are gradually introduced and listed. Index of verbs.

Seshie, Herman and A. Crakye Denteh. Spoken Ewe for Non-Ewe Beginners. Accra-North, Ghana: Pointer Limited, 1974. 69 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. The 64 lessons include dialogues, drills, and grammar notes.

Warburton, Irene P. et al. Ewe Basic Course. Rev. version. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, African Studies Program, 1968. xxx, 271 pp. [ED 028 444]

Designed to give speech, and some reading and writing practice. In Part I (pre-speech phase), the phonology is outlined, accompanied by identification drills. The active phase (Part II) consists of 27 lessons in which dialogues with buildups serve as a base for structured conversation. Comprehension exercises include reading, translation, or dictation types. Grammatical explanations are in structural terms. Culture notes. The Ewe material is in the standard orthography supplemented by a transcription in Part I. Ewe-English glossary. [NDEA]

Welmers, William E. and Gilbert Ansre. A Start in Ewe. Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1960.

GRAMMARS

Ansre, Gilbert. "The grammatical units of Ewe." Ph.D. Diss., University of London, 1966.

_____. The Tonal Structure of Ewe. (Hartford Studies in Linguistics, Vol. 1) Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1961. vii, 86 pp. [M.A. Thesis]

Based on the theory that Ewe has two tones instead of three. Numerous examples follow items described. Appendices include samples of texts.

Stahlke, Herbert I.W. "Topics in Ewe Phonology." Ph.D. Diss., University of California at Los Angeles, 1971.

Westermann, Diedrich. Die Ewe-Sprache in Togo. Berlin, Germany: Walter de Gruyter and Co., 1961. 95 pp. [Reprint of 1939 ed.]

_____. A Study of the Ewe Language. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1960. xiv, 258 pp. [Reprint of 1930 ed.]

This translation is based on the original editfon of the Grammatik der Ewe-Sprache (1907), completely revised by Westermann, and appears in conjunction with the author's new Ewe dictionary published in 1954. There are five sections, which deal with sounds, tones, forms, sentence formation, and word formation. The appendices contain discussions of the dialect of the Western Interior, the relation of Ewe to other West African languages, and texts with translations. Ewe material is in the script approved by the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures.

DICTIONARIES

Chambers, D.O., ed. A Glossary of the Fon Language. Prelim. ed. Checklist One: French-Fon. Cotonou, Dahomey, 1968. ii, 48 pp.

Transcribed according to a syllabary based on French orthography.

Harguindéguy, R. and Les Catéchistes d'Azové. Premiers Eléments pour un Dictionnaire Adja-Français. Azové, Dahomey and Lyon, France: Afrique et Langage, 1969. 2 vols.

Entries include grammatical information, and illustrative phrases. Loan words occasionally indicated. Tone marked only in cases where authors were sure of them.

Rassinoux, Jean. Dictionnaire français-fon. Edition Provisoire. Cotonou, Dahomey, 1974.

Entries include levels of usage and illustrative sentences.

Segurola, R.P.B. Dictionnaire fon-français. Cotonou, Dahomey: Procure de l'Archidiocèse, Centre Catéchétique, 1963. 2 vols.

Westermann, Diedrich. Wörterbuch der Ewe-Sprache. (Institut für Orientforschung. Veröffentlichung. Nr. 8) Berlin, Germany: Akademie-Verlag, 1954. xxiv, 796 pp.

A comprehensive Ewe-German dictionary. The Introduction presents the phonetics of Ewe and its dialects. Entries include parts of speech and word classes, and illustrative examples (with some cultural information). Synonyms; cross-references. Phonetic transcription used throughout.

FULANI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Noye, Dominique. Cours pratique de langue peul (fulfuldé du Nord-Cameroun). Maroua, Cameroon: Mission Catholique, 1970-71. 2 vols.

The exercises are based on a 500-word basic vocabulary. Also included are approximately 2,000 French phrases translated into Fulani. Emphasis is on grammatical structures rather than on conversation. Appended are some Fulani texts with French literary translation.

_____. Éléments de langue foulfouldé (Foulbé du Nord-Cameroun). 2nd rev. ed. Maroua, Cameroon: Mission Catholique, 1966. iv, 100 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Pedagogical grammar containing 17 lessons. Material is explained in partly traditional, partly structural terms followed by numerous examples which also serve as text material to be learned.

Swift, Lloyd B. et al. Fula Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1965. xvi, 489 pp. Tapes. [ED 013 453]

Designed to give speech practice. In the 40 lessons, and three reviews, grammar is illustrated in dialogues with buildups and narratives which serve as a base for

structured conversation. Grammar explanations, in Lessons 1-20, in structural terms. There are pronunciation, substitution, substitution-correlation, transformation, response, and expansion drills. The Senegambian dialect is represented, written in transcription with juncture and intonation indicated by punctuation. Fulani-English glossary. [NDEA/FSI]

Mohamadou, Eldridge. Lisez et écrivez le foulfoulde. Yaoundé, Cameroon: Ministère de l'Éducation, de la culture et de la formation professionelle, Centre Fédéral Linguistique et Cultural, 1971. 123 pp.

READERS

Soo, Alfa I. Janngen fulfulde. Paris, France: Presence africaine, 1969. 32 pp.
Covers phonetics and includes a reader.

GRAMMARS

Arnott, D.W. The nominal and verbal system of Fula. Fair Lawn, NJ: Oxford University Press, 1970. xiv, 432 pp.
Covers also the phonological and morphophonemic phenomena, and the main patterns of sentence structure in Fulani.

_____. "The tense system in Gombe Fula." Afrika und Übersee 49.1-31, 105-35, 173-95, 270-98 (1965).

Dauzat, A. Éléments de la langue Peule du Nord Cameroun. 2nd ed. Albi, France: Imprimerie Albigeoise, 1952. 128 pp.

Gaden, Henri. Le poular: dialecte peul du fouta Sénégalais. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg Press, 1967. 2 vols. [Reprint of Paris, 1913-14 ed.] Vol. I: Étude morphologique. Vol. II: Lexique Poular-Français.

Klingenheben, August. Die Laute des Ful. (Hamburg University, Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen, Vol. 9) Berlin, Germany: D. Reimer, 1927. 155 pp.

_____. Die Sprache der Ful (Dialekt von Adamaua). Grammatik, Texte und Wörterverzeichnis. (Afrikanistische Forschungen, I) Hamburg, W. Germany: J.J. Augustin, 1963. xxii, 461 pp.
Descriptive grammar with cross-references. In the grammar section, each chapter contains a short text with vocabulary explanations and translations. In the section entitled "Texte" there are no notes or translations. Fulani-German, German-Fulani dictionary.

_____. Die Suffixklassen des Ful. (Hamburg University, Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen, Vol. 23) Berlin, Germany: D. Reimer, 1941. 107 pp.

Leith-Ross, Sylvia. Fulani Grammar. Lagos, Nigeria: Chikko Service, 1932. 210 pp. [1st pub. 1921]

Stennes, Leslie H. The Identification of Participants in Adamawa Fulani. (Hartford Studies in Linguistics, No. 24) Hartford, CT: The Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1969. iii, 167 pp.
An application of the stratificational theory to discourse structure in Fulani. In Chapter II the author gives a comprehensive classification of common Fulani events (the semological counterparts of verbs). These are classified by number and kind of relational roles which are related to them. Chapter III is an inventory and a brief description of many of the sememes needed in the subsequent description. In Chapter IV the realizational rules used are given to map the sememes into lexemes on the grammatical stratum. Each rule is illustrated by means of short examples. In Chapter V the method is applied to five texts with both the hypothetical and actual results shown. Modified orthographic conventions as developed at the Bamako Conference of 1966 used. Indices. Selected bibliography.

_____. A Reference Grammar of Adamawa Fulani. (African Language Monograph No. 8) East Lansing, MI: African Studies Center, Michigan State University, 1967. xiv, 285 pp. [ED 016 955]
A descriptive grammar with the purpose of giving an overview of the entire structure of Fulani. Structural in approach. Intended for the specialist. Analysis is based strictly on recorded texts. The book is divided into six major parts: phonology, morphophonemics, morphology, syntax, clauses and analysis of discourses in Fulani. Appendices include six discourses with near literal and free translations. Bibliography. Index. [NDEA]

Taylor, F.W. A Grammar of the Adamawa Dialect of the Fulani Language. 2nd ed. (Taylor's Fulani-Hausa Series) Oxford, England: Clarendon Press, 1953. xiv, 124 pp.
A pedagogical grammar to be supplemented by conversational practice with an informant. Nineteen lessons which contain grammar notes in traditional terms, a vocabulary list, and translation exercises. Lesson One contains pronunciation information based primarily on a comparison with English. Fulani material is in a transcription employing dots under letters. A poem and a story follow the lessons.

DICTIONARIES

Ba, Oumar. Petit vocabulaire de la langue peul parlée au Fouta Toro. (Les langues africaines au Sénégal, 35) Dakar, Senegal: Centre de linguistique appliquée de Dakar, 1968. 156 pp.

Dauzat, André. Lexique français-peul et peul-français. 2nd ed. Albi, France: Imprimerie Albigeoise, 1952. 444 pp.

Gaden, Henri. Dictionnaire peul-français; publication de fichier Gaden des manuscrits de l'I.F.A.N., enrichi par une équipe de chercheurs du Fuuta-Tooro et du Fuuta-Dyaloo. (Catalogues et documents, 22) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Fondamental d'Afrique Noire, 1969- . 2 vols. (further volumes forthcoming)
Entries are key words, followed by extended explanations, expressions, and proverbs. Dialectal synonyms indicated. Cultural information. Description of phonology in introduction. Phonetic transcription used throughout.

Labouret, H. La langue des peuls ou foulbé: lexique français-peul. (Mémoires, No. 41) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, 1955. 160 pp.
The introduction includes bibliographies, statements on the origin of the Fulani speakers and the place of

the language in the classification of African languages. Chapter on phonetics and grammar. Appendices include lists of kinship terms, flora and fauna. The dictionary follows and is intended as a tool to provide beginning French students with vocabulary, and the advanced students with material for dialect study. It contains terms in current use in each of the five major dialect groups and also those common to all five groups. Subentries are arranged by meaning. Grammatical notes and information on usage are provided. Dialect sources are indicated.

Mohammadou, Eldridge. Lexique fulfuldé comparé. Parler des Jallinko'en de l'Ader (Niger Central). Yaoundé, Cameroon: Ministère de l'Éducation et de la culture, Centre Fédéral Linguistique et Culturel, 1970. 2 vols.
Fulani-French-Fulani-English dictionary.

Taylor, F.W. A Fulani-English Dictionary. Oxford, England: Clarendon Press, 1932. vi, 242 pp.
Assumes knowledge of the grammar of Fulani. Arranged according to the roots. Entries include compounds, participles, derived words, and some etymological information.

GÃ

TEACHING MATERIALS

Ablorh-Odjidja, J.R. Gã for beginners. Accra, Ghana: Waterville Publishing House, 1968. 207 pp.
Designed to give speech practice. Each of the 26 lessons consists of a text, vocabulary, grammatical explanation and exercises. Tones are indicated. The second half of the book deals with idioms and idiomatic expressions. Key to exercises.

Berry, Jack and Nii Amon Kotei. An Introductory Course in Gã. Evanston, IL: Northwestern University, 1969. ii, 148 pp. Tapes. [ED 028 426]
Designed to give speech practice. In Lessons 8-65, grammar is illustrated in dialogues and narratives and explained in structural terms. There are repetition, completion, and substitution drills. Lessons 1-7 contain pronunciation and repetition drills. The phonology is outlined in the introduction. Tonal information in most lessons. The Gã material is in a transcription which differs little from the standard orthography except for indication of tone, nasality, and vowel length. Appended is a summary of the derivation of plural noun forms. Gã-English glossary. [NDEA]

Fleischer, C.F. A New Gã-English Method. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1924. 183 pp. [1st pub. 1905]
Traditional pedagogical textbook. First part contains description of phonology, orthography, and grammar rules. Numerous examples follow items described. Included are also lists of simple verbs, sentences, idiomatic phrases, topical vocabularies, etc. Translation exercises. The second part contains 12 texts without translations.

READERS

Moir, Catherine P. New Gã Reader. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1929-30. 2 vols.

GRAMMARS

Bannerman, C.J. Gã grammar of function. 2nd ed. Cape Coast, Ghana: Methodist Book Depot, 1968. 168 pp.
Primarily intended for school children. Eighty lessons with grammatical exercises, questions and diagrams.

Kotei, Nii A. "A Description of Modern Spoken Gã with Particular Reference to Tone and Intonation." Ph.D. Diss., Northwestern University, 1969. 104 pp.

Kropp, M.E. "The Morphology of the Gã Aspect System." Journal of African Languages 5.121-27 (1966).

DICTIONARIES

Accam, T.N. Adangme vocabularies, including a Klama vocabulary. Ed. by M.E. Kropp. (Local studies series, 2) Legon Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1966. 75 pp.
Part I is an Adangme-English series of topical vocabularies (kinship terms, body, clothing, etc.), followed by lists of idiomatic expressions and sentences. Part II focuses on political and military terminology. Part III is a Klama-English glossary, with additional Adangme vocabulary lists. Phonetic transcription used throughout. Brief cultural information provided.

Akrofi, C.A. and G.L. Botchey. English-Twi-Gã Dictionary. Accra, Ghana: Waterville Publishing House, 1968. vii, 83 pp.
Concise dictionary based on Christaller, English-Twi-Gã Dictionary, and Mohr, English-Twi Dictionary. Intended for speakers of the three languages. No illustrative phrases.

Richter, L. and J. Schopf. A Gã-English Dictionary. 2nd ed. Basel, Switzerland: Basel Mission Evangelical Society, 1912. 256 pp.

Wertz, F. Gã-English Dictionary. Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, n.d. 8 vols.

GA'ANDA (GABIN)

GRAMMARS

Newmann, Roxana. "A case grammar of g'anda." M.A. thesis, University of California at Los Angeles, 1971. 261 pp.

GBARI

GRAMMARS

Hyman, Larry M. and Daniel J. Magaji. Essentials of Gwari Grammar. (Occasional Publication no. 27) Ibadan, Nigeria: University of Ibadan, Institute of African Studies, 1970. 150 pp.
Intended as a practical introduction. Part I is an introduction to the sound and tone systems. Part II deals with the noun phrase, Part III, the verb phrase, and Part IV, the sentence. Appendices on some common Gwari greetings, and an English-Gwári word list. Grammar index.

Edgar, Francis. A Grammar of the Gbari Language, with

Gbari-English and English-Gbari Dictionaries. Belfast, Ireland: Baird, 1909. 373 pp. [O.P.]

GISIGA

GRAMMARS

Lukas, Johannes. Studien zur Sprache der Gisiga (Nordkamerun). (Afrikanistische Forschungen 4) Glückstadt, W. Germany: J.J. Augustin, 1970. 194 pp.

On the whole, structural in approach. In three parts: Part I deals with phonology and morphology. Part II contains nine texts with approximate translations in German (I-V) and French (VI-IX). Part III includes a Gisiga-German, German-Gisiga vocabulary. Bibliography.

GREBO

GRAMMARS

Innes, Gordon. An Introduction to Grebo. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1966. 160 pp.

A descriptive grammar intended for the specialist. Structural in approach. Part I contains an outline of the phonology, morphology (which composes about half the book), and syntax. Numerous examples follow items described. Part II contains two Grebo texts together with translation and annotation. Bishop Auer's transcription (1873) is used throughout with minor modifications. Numbers indicate tone.

DICTIONARIES

Innes, Gordon. A Grebo-English Dictionary. (West African Language Monographs, No. 6) Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1967. v, 131 pp.

The material was collected from one informant. Approximately 4000 entries include information about parts of speech and word classes, and illustrative sentences (with some cultural information). The Grebo material is in a modified form of the Roman orthography used by Bishop Auer; the tones are marked by numbers. An introductory chapter contains summaries of the phonology and nominal and verbal affixes.

GUANG (GONJA)

GRAMMARS

Painter, Colin. Gonja: A Phonological and Grammatical Study. (African Series, Vol. 1) Bloomington, IN: Indiana University Research Center for the Language Sciences, 1970. 541 pp.

Rapp, E.L. "The Gonja Language." Mitteilungen des Instituts für Orientforschung 5.235-86 (1957).

Reineke, Brigitte. The Structure of the Nkonya Language. With texts and glossary. Leipzig, E. Germany: Verlag Enzyklopädie, 1972. 135 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Blair, H.A. Gonja Vocabulary and Notes (English Word List and Notes on Grammar). Accra, Ghana: Government Printing Department, 1934.

Rytz, O. et al. Gonja-English dictionary and spelling book. Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1971. 273 pp.

Tomlinson, H.H. Gonja Word List and Grammar (English-Gonja Word List and Notes on Grammar). Tamale, Ghana: Vernacular Literature Bureau, 1952.

Westermann, Diedrich. Die Sprache der Guang in Togo und auf der Goldkueste und Fuenf Andere Togosprachen. Berlin, Germany, 1922.

Contains Guang-German vocabularies.

GURMA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Beckett, Eleanor. Spoken Gourma. Ouagadougou, Haute Volta, U.S. Peace Corps, 1969. 99 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Microwave format. The first 20 cycles are devoted to the Gurma spelling system and pronunciation, include drills. Cycles 21-49 contain drills, conversation practice, and a few grammar notes. The Gurma material is presented in the conventional spelling system, with tone frequently marked. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Chantoux, Alphonse, Alexandre Gontier and André Prost. Grammaire gourmantché. (Initiations et études africaines, No. 23) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Fondamentale d'Afrique Noire, 1968. 160 pp.

Reference grammar. Deals with phonology, morphology, and syntax. Annexes on different types of verbs, and one comparing Gurma with Moré. Appendix on the verbs of state. Alphabetical index.

Tersis, Nicole. Essai pour une phonologie du gurma parlé à Kpana (Nord-Togo). Lexique gurma-français. (Bulletin de la SELAF, 4) Paris, France: Société pour l'étude des langues africaines, 1967. 73 pp.

The glossary contains 950 words.

DICTIONARIES

Chantoux, A. Dictionnaire gourmatché-français. Niamey, Niger: Institut français d'Afrique noire, 1954.

HAUSA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Akamba, Bawah and A. Crakye Denteh. Spoken Hausa for Non-Hausa Beginners. Accra-North, Ghana: Pointer Limited, 1974. 74 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Fifty lessons containing dialogues, grammar notes, and pattern practice, completion, response, and question-answer drills and exercises.

Brauner, Siegmund and Michael Ashiwaju. Lehrbuch der Hausa-Sprache. Munich, W. Germany: Hueber, and Leipzig, E. Germany: VEB Verlag Enzyklopädie, 1966. 177 pp.

Twenty lessons designed to introduce the student to the basic structures of Hausa, and to give reading and comprehension practice. Lessons typically contain grammatical explanations, examples, vocabulary lists,

reading and translation exercises. Part II is a Chrestomathy. No notes or translations. Hausa-German vocabulary.

Cowan, J Ronayne and Russell G. Schuh. Spoken Hausa. Ithaca, NY: Spoken Language Services, Inc., 1975. 450 pp. Cassettes.

Designed to give speech and comprehension practice. Also designed to be used as a basis for an intermediate course with supplementary exercises and readings. In the 25 units, grammar is explained in structural terms to be used for reference purposes. There are dialogues, pronunciation, tone, pattern practice, transformation, completion, question and answer, sentence construction, and comprehension drills and exercises. Illustrations serve as a base for structured conversation. No vocabulary.

Hodge, Carleton T. and Ibrahim Umaru. Hausa Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, 1963. xx, 399 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO.] [O.P.] [ED 010 492]

May be used for self-instructional purposes. The 30 units are designed to give speech and reading practice. Hausa material is in standard orthography accompanied by a transcription in cases where the spelling does not clearly represent the pronunciation. There are pronunciation, repetition, substitution, response, and transformation drills. Grammar is explained in structural terms and illustrated in dialogues with buildups. Two appendices cover supplementary conversations and selected translations of drill sentences. Selected bibliography. Glossary. [NDEA/FSI]

Kraft, Charles H. and Anthony Kirk-Greene. Teach Yourself Hausa. Cambridge, England: English Universities Press, Ltd., 1973.

_____ and Marguerite E. Kraft. Introductory Hausa. Berkeley and Los Angeles, CA: University of California Press, 1973. xvi, 408 pp. Tapes.

Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 20 lessons grammar is illustrated in proverbs and dialogues, and explained in notes. There are pronunciation, recognition, discrimination, production, substitution, expansion, construction, dictation, and comprehension drills and exercises. Hausa material based on Kano dialect. Tests after Lessons 7, 14, and 20. Synopsis of Hausa grammar. Glossary of technical terminology. Hausa-English, English-Hausa vocabularies. Index of Hausa names, and index of grammar. (See also Kraft, A Hausa Reader.) [NDEA]

_____, Marguerite E. Kraft and Leilani B. McClure. Workbook in Introductory Hausa. Prelim. ed. East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University, African Studies Center, 1966. 106 pp. [ED 010 398]

Provides supplementary materials for use in a course on Hausa. Provides pictures plus supplementary items, series of sample tests, and a series of expansion drills. [NDEA]

_____ and Salisu Abubakar. An Introduction to Spoken Hausa. Prelim. ed. (African Language Monograph No. 5) East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University, African Studies Center, 1965. 2 vols. Tapes. [ED 010 396]

Designed to give speech practice. Twenty-five lessons, five of which contain grammatical reviews. Grammar is illustrated in dialogues with breakdowns and a few narratives, and explained within a tagmemic framework. There are repetition, transformation, response, completion, substitution, sentence construction, expansion and translation drills. Culture notes. An introductory chapter outlines the phonology, in articulatory terms. There are recognition, discrimination, and production drills. Hausa material is in a transcription (with tone and vowel length marked) which largely corresponds with printed Hausa. The Workbook includes information about vocabulary learning. It also contains pictures for use with each lesson and supplementary vocabulary, sample texts, and expansion drills. Appendices cover: indices of names, situations, grammatical definitions and points. Hausa-English glossary. [NDEA]

Skinner, A. Neil. Hausa for Beginners. 2nd ed. London, England: University of London Press, 1968. 76 pp.

Designed to give reading practice. In the 21 lessons, the Hausa material is in the standard orthography modified to indicate length and tone. The lessons contain dialogues without buildups and narratives followed by notes on pronunciation, grammar (in structural terms), vocabulary usage, and culture. Lesson 21 contains proverbs. Bibliography. Hausa-English glossary.

READERS

Abraham, R.C. Hausa Literature and the Hausa Sound System. London, England: University of London Press, 1959. 186 pp.

For self-instructional purposes and designed to teach vocabulary. Uses orthography of the author's The Language of the Hausa People. In the first section, the Hausa text appears on the left-hand page and a literal English translation with reference to the grammar on the right-hand side. In the second section, the phonology is outlined in detail in articulatory terms. Appended is an index to the second section.

Kirk-Greene, A.H.M. and Yahaya Aliya. A Modern Hausa Reader. New York, NY: David McKay, 1967. 143 pp.

Contemporary passages from speeches, debates, reports, and newspaper accounts with accompanying vocabulary notes are designed to illustrate the idiom and terminology used in 20th century government. An introductory paragraph places each selection in its setting. Appended are orthographic rules, loanwords, advertisements, and a passage in ultra-modern Hausa.

Kraft, Charles H. Cultural Materials in Hausa: For Use in Intermediate and Advanced Courses in Hausa. Prelim. ed. (African Language Monograph No. 6A) East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University, African Studies Center, 1966. viii, 330 pp. [ED 010 397] Workbook. Prelim. ed. (African Language Monograph No. 6B) 1966. 180 pp.

Designed to give speech, reading, and possibly writing practice. To be used in conjunction with a dictionary and a reference grammar. The topically-arranged reading selections, covering a variety of topics, are edited and marked for tone and vowel length. The Hausa material is in the standard orthography. (Superseded by A Hausa Reader, 1974.) [NDEA]

_____. A Hausa Reader. Cultural Materials with Helps for Use in Teaching Intermediate and Advanced Hausa.

Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 1974. 528 pp.

Designed as a sequel to Kraft and Kraft, Introductory Hausa. Materials include fables, riddles, proverbs, and excerpts from historical texts. Tone and vowel-length marked. Grammatical and vocabulary notes.

Murphy, John D. An Inductive Reader of Newspaper Hausa: Text, Translation and Glossary. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, 1968. 2 vols. [Vol. I, O.P.]

Intended for the beginning student. Provides a representative selection of newspaper texts with the grammatical and lexical materials needed to achieve adequate comprehension. Each of the 25 readings is accompanied by notes and vocabulary and an English translation. Hausa-English glossary. Vol. II contains an outline of Hausa sounds and spellings, as well as a systematic treatment of certain features of the grammar.

Rattray, Robert Sutherland. Hausa Folk-Lore Customs, Proverbs, etc.: Collected and Transliterated with English Translation and Notes. New York, NY: Negro Universities Press, 1969. 2 vols. [1st pub. London, 1913] 2 vols.

The reading selections are in the Arabic script, in the standard orthography, and in translation. Appended are grammatical and cultural notes.

Skinner, A. Neil. Hausa Readings: Selections from Edgar's Tatsuniyoyi. Madison, WI: University of Wisconsin Press, 1968. xxi, 278 pp.

For the intermediate student. Folktales, mostly in Western dialects, i.e. other than Standard Hausa of Kano. Tone and vowel length are not marked. Some tales are presented in ajami (Arabic) script. Cultural and vocabulary notes.

GRAMMARS

Abraham, R.C. The Language of the Hausa People. London, England: University of London Press, 1959. x, 236 pp.

A descriptive grammar. Traditional in approach. Brief introduction to phonology. Part I covers basic parts of speech. Numerous examples with translation follow items described. Part II is an elaboration on the difficult grammatical points described in Part I. Paragraphs are continuously numbered with some cross-referencing. Appendices cover the tonal and stress system, proper names, a table of verbs, and a grammatical index.

Ahmed, Umaru, and Bello Daura. An introduction to classical Hausa and the major dialects. Zaria, Nigeria: Northern Nigerian Pub. Co., 1970. 136 pp.

Hodge, Carleton T. An Outline of Hausa Grammar. (Language Dissertation No. 41) Baltimore, MD: Linguistic Society of America, 1947.

A linguistic grammar intended for the specialist. Structural in approach. Description is based on the speech of one informant from the Katsina district of northern Nigeria. The four chapters outline the phonology, morphophonemics and morphology of the noun and verb. Examples included. Phonemic transcription used throughout. Bibliography.

Howeidy, A. Concise Hausa Grammar. 2nd ed. London, England: George Ronald, 1959. xii, 232 pp.

A reference grammar in traditional terms. Arrangement is according to parts of speech. The standard dialect is represented. Some translation exercises.

Kraft, Charles H. A Study of Hausa Syntax. (Hartford Studies in Linguistics, 8-10) Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1963. 3 vols. [ED 014 053/054/055 Resumé only]

A partial descriptive grammar. Tagmemic in approach and intended for the specialist. Vol. I, Structure, comprises the major part of the study. Vol. II, An Analytical Lexicon of Hausa Function Words, and Vol. III, Texts, provide supplementary materials. In Vol. I, focus is on the phrase, the clause, and the sentence. The morphological data is presented under: nominals, verbs, particles, and ideophones. Numerous examples follow items described, with a literal, and when necessary a free translation. Vol. III contains a major portion of the corpus under investigation presented with a literal and a free translation. Standard orthography is used with the addition of tone marks. The general introduction includes a phonological outline and a bibliography. [NDEA]

Maxwell, J. Lowry and Eleanor M. Sorshey. Yau da Gobe: A Hausa Grammar for Beginners. Jos, Nigeria: Sudan Interior Mission, 1963. 192 pp.

Pedagogical grammar, traditional in approach. Does not mark tone and vowel length.

Taylor, F.W. A Practical Hausa Grammar. 2nd ed. Oxford, England: Clarendon Press, 1959. xix, 157 pp.

A pedagogical grammar, traditional in approach. The parts of speech are briefly outlined, followed by examples with translations given in a modified phonetic script. Each chapter contains a short Hausa-English vocabulary and translation exercises. The final chapter is given over to extracts taken from examinations. Answers provided. Hausa-English, English-Hausa vocabulary.

DICTIONARIES

Abraham, R.C. Dictionary of the Hausa Language. 2nd ed. London, England: University of London Press, 1962. xxvii, 992 pp.

A comprehensive Hausa-English dictionary. Entries are subdivided according to homophones and verb classes. Entries include parts of speech, and illustrative phrases and sentences. Tones marked. Verbs are in the third person singular followed by the other subject-pronouns for each tense. The conjugation of the verb is indicated by symbols explained in the introduction. Dialectal variations are indicated. References.

Bargery, G.P. A Hausa-English Dictionary and English-Hausa Vocabulary. 2nd ed. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1951. 1226 pp. [Reprint of 1934 ed.]

Comprehensive dictionary.

Newman, Paul, et al. Sabon Kamus na Hausa zuwa Turanci. London, England: Oxford University Press, forthcoming.

Hausa-English comprehensive reference dictionary. Primarily intended for secondary school students.

Robinson, C.H. Dictionary of the Hausa Language: Hausa-English, English-Hausa. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1969. 2 vols.

A comprehensive dictionary. The Hausa material is

in transliteration (i.e. not Arabic). Entries include illustrative sentences, an English gloss or explanation. The source language of loanwords is indicated.

Schön, James Frederick. Dictionary of the Hausa Language. London, England: Luzac, 1968. 480 pp. [Reprint of London, 1876 ed.]

Hausa-English, English-Hausa dictionary. Entries include parts of speech, and numerous illustrative phrases and sentences. Cross-references. Appended are Hausa texts without translations. Hausa material in Roman transcription.

Skinner, A. Neil. K'amus na Turanci da Hausa; babban ja-gora ga Turanci. English-Hausa dictionary. 2nd ed. Zaria, Nigeria: Northern Nigerian Publishing Company for the Centre of Hausa Studies, 1970. 166 pp.

An English-Hausa dictionary intended for the speakers of Hausa.

IDOMA

GRAMMARS

Abraham, R.C. The Idoma Language: Idoma Wordlists, Idoma Chrestomathy, Idoma Proverbs. 2nd ed. London, England: University of London Press, 1967. 264 pp.

The Uturkpo dialect is represented. The orthography used is a modified version of that of the IPA. Tones are marked.

IGBIRRA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Scholz, Hans and Christel Scholz. Let's go forward -- let's read and write Ebira: a work book introducing the standard Ebira orthography and containing the first Ebira-English dictionary of ca. 2,000 entries. Huntington Beach, CA: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1972. 112 pp.

IGBO

TEACHING MATERIALS

Carnochan, J. and Belonwu Iwuchuku. An Igbo Revision Course: For G.C.E., W.A.S.C. and Similar Examinations (Using the Official Orthography). London, England: Oxford University Press, 1963. ix, 168 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes and designed to give reading practice. In part I, concentration is on the writing system. Part II contains selections from Igbo literature. Part III contains translation drills, 10 Igbo essays and a review.

Green, Margaret and G.E. Igwe Mackeson. Introductory Igbo language course for non-Igbo speakers. London, England: Methodist Missionary Society, 1966. 181 pp. Tape.

Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In Part I, lessons contain unrelated sentences followed by grammatical notes in a separate section. Part II consists of the same but contains conversations and dialogues. Based on Owụhụ dialect spoken outside Umuahia.

Igwe, G.E. and Margaret M. Green. Igbo Language Course. Ibadan, Nigeria: Oxford University Press, 1967-70. 3 vols. Tapes.

Primarily intended for the native speaker of Igbo. Designed to give grammatical information and reading and writing practice. Part I contains scripts of the recordings with a translation. Part II contains grammatical notes on the recordings, exercises and tests. Book II, Igbo Dialogues and Stories includes grammar and culture notes. Igbo-English glossary. Tones are marked. Book III: Dialogue, Sayings, Translation covers three types of writing: modern dialogue in colloquial Igbo, a translation from English of a literary essay, and a collection of traditional sayings. The dialect represented is that of Umuahia.

Ntukogu, Anugo P. et al. Igbo Basic Course. Wilberforce, OH: Central State College, n.d. 85 pp. Tapes. Records.

Designed to give speech practice. Grammar is illustrated in dialogues, basic sentences, and exercises. The Igbo material is in the standard orthography, with tone marked in the pronunciation (tone recognition) drills. Igbo-English glossary. [PC]

Ogbalu, F. Chidozie. Igbo mbu; maka elementary II, in official orthography. Onitsha, Nigeria: University Publishing Co., 1967. 74 pp.

_____, ed. Mbediogu. 9th rev. ed. Onitsha, Nigeria: University Publishing Co., 1966. 111 pp.

Swift, Lloyd B., A. Ahaghotu and E. Ugorji. Igbo Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1962. xiv, 498 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO.] [O.P.] [ED 010 452]

Designed to give speech and reading practice. The 30 units may be covered in not less than 600 hours. Dialogues, accompanied by grammar notes in structural terms, are written in the old standard orthography. The spelling, however, represents a variety, hence making it necessary for a transcription column to facilitate pronunciation. Tone is also indicated in this column. Extensive grammar notes accompany the dialogues. There are pronunciation (tone), substitution, response, transformation drills, and pattern practices. Some units contain intonation information. Vocabulary is introduced in dialogue buildups and in supplementary lists, sometimes accompanied by cultural notes. Units 25-30 include narratives which serve as a base for structured conversation. The dialect of the course is "Central Igbo". Glossary. [NDEA/FSI]

Ward, Ida C. An Introduction to the Ibo Language. Cambridge, England: W. Heffer & Sons, 1936. xiii, 215 pp.

For self-instructional purposes or for use with an informant. A gradual introduction to the grammar and tones of Igbo. Part I consists of the main simple constructions of an Igbo sentence. In Part II, longer sentences, narratives and conversations are introduced. The dialect of Owerri is represented. To be used in conjunction with Adams' Modern Ibo Grammar to which references are made. Exercises and numerous examples. Tones are marked.

Welmers, William E. and Beatrice F. Welmers. Igbo: A Learner's Manual. Los Angeles, CA: The Authors, 1969. iv, 200 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. A lesson course

as well as a descriptive grammar. In the 15 lessons, grammar is illustrated in sentences, dialogues, and occasional narratives and extensively explained in structural terms. The grammar and vocabulary described is common to most "Central" dialects. Comprehension practice and structured conversation. The fundamentals of the tonal system are introduced in Lessons 1-7, although particular emphasis is on tone throughout the course. Recognition tests in Lessons 1-8, and a review in most lessons. The transcription used is in most respects identical with the standard orthography. Instructions on the use of the material in the introduction. Grammatical index.

Williams, Richard A. et al. Igbo Basic Course. (An adaptation of the FSI Igbo Basic Course with supplements.) Atlanta, GA: Morehouse-Spelman College, 1966. 172 pp. Tapes.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. Divided into three parts: the first contains a pronunciation section with drills on recognizing and identifying tones and repetition drills for some vowels. The second contains 11 dialogues without buildups, but accompanied by a translation. The third contains narratives and a number of drills of the following types: repetition, response, substitution, and translation. No indication of tone. Glossary. [PC]

READERS

Mezu, Sebastian Okechukwu, comp. Igbo market literature. Buffalo, NY: Black Academy Press, 1972. 5 vols.

GRAMMARS

Abraham, R.C. The Principles of Ibo. Archival Edition of Typescript. (Occasional Publication, No. 4) Ibadan, Nigeria: University of Ibadan, Institute of African Studies, 1967. 127 pp. [Posthumous publication]

Intended for the specialist. To accompany the Author's Dictionary. Eleven sections dealing primarily with morphological categories. Sections on sounds, tones, and relative sentences.

Adams, R.F.G. A Modern Ibo Grammar. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1932. 200 pp. [O.P.]

Carrell, Patricia L. A Transformational Grammar of Igbo. (West African Language Monograph Series, No. 8) London, England: Cambridge University Press (in association with the West African Languages Survey and the Institute of African Studies, Ibadan), 1970. vii, 123 pp. [Ph.D. Diss., University of Texas, Austin, 1966]

A linguistic description intended to be as complete an analysis of Igbo as possible. The author states that the most common Igbo constructions in the dialects of her two informants can be generated with the grammar provided in the book. The grammar contains a set of base rules, a set of unordered rules representing the lexicon, the transformational components of Igbo (both obligatory and optional), rules governing tone (terracing), and segmental phonology. Two appendices cover conventions used in the description, and phonological data pertinent to the rules discussed in Chapter V. Contains diagrams. Many illustrations provided. Phonemic transcription used throughout. Bibliography.

Green, Margaret M. and G.E. Igwe. A Descriptive Grammar of Igbo. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1963. xiii, 235 pp.

A descriptive grammar, structural in approach. Part I, the major part of the book, deals with linguistic units from morphemes to multiclausal sentences covering parts of speech, affirmative, negative, and auxiliary verb forms, and nomino-verbal forms. Part II contains six texts, analyzed in descending order from sentence to morpheme. Numerous examples follow items described. The Igbo material is in transcription with tones indicated. A text is provided in the orthography in use before 1961. Outline of phonology in articulatory terms. The dialect studied is that spoken near Umuahia. Igbo-English glossary.

Williamson, Kay and O.A. Egberipou. The sound system and spelling of Kolokuma. Rev. ed. Ibadan, Nigeria: University of Ibadan, Dept. of Linguistics and Nigerian Languages. 20 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Ogbalu, Frederick C. Ọkọwa-okwu: Igbo-English-English-Igbo dictionary. Onitsha, Nigeria: Varsity Printing Press, 1962. [1st pub. 1959]

Thomas, Northcote Whitridge. English-Ibo and Ibo-English Dictionary. New York, NY: Negro Universities Press, 1969. [Reprint of 1913-1914 London ed.] [Parts II & V of the Anthropological Report on the Ibo-Speaking Peoples of Nigeria.]

Welmers, Beatrice F. and William E. Welmers. Igbo: A Learner's Dictionary. Los Angeles, CA: University of California, African Studies Center, 1968. x, 397 pp. [ED 024 938 Resumé only]

An Igbo-English, English-Igbo dictionary intended for the student who has acquired a knowledge of basic Igbo. The approximately 2000 English and 2000 Igbo entries represent colloquial speech. In the Igbo-English section, alphabetization is according to the first syllable-initial consonant of the words. Entries include numerous illustrative sentences, explanations, phrase combinations, and special usages. A modified version of the standard orthography is used with diacritics indicating tone. [PC] [ED 024 938]

Williamson, Kay, ed. Igbo-English dictionary, based on the Onitsha dialect. Rev. ed. Benin City, Nigeria: Ethiope Publishing Corp., 1972. lxx, 568 pp. [Based on the compilation by G.W. Pearman. Revised and expanded by C.N. Madunagu, E.I. Madunagu and others.]

Introduction contains notes on alphabetization and arrangement; orthography, grammar, phonology and a bibliography. Entries include levels of usage, grammatical information, affixes, illustrative phrases and sentences, and cultural information.

IJAW

TEACHING MATERIALS

Efẹbọ, L. Awotua. Nembe language made easy. Mie lokomote Nembebibi. (Occasional Publications, No. 6) Ibadan, Nigeria: University of Ibadan, Institute of African Studies, 1967. xvii, 116 pp.

Designed for the beginning student of secondary and elementary levels. Contains a brief grammatical outline, two-way vocabulary lists, and narratives.

GRAMMARS

Williamson, Kay. A Grammar of the Kolokuma Dialect of Ijo. (West African Language Monographs, 2) Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1968. vii, 127 pp. [Rev. ed. of Ph.D. Diss., Yale, 1963]

Structural description of phonology. Chomsky's and Lees' generative transformational model are followed in describing grammar. Indexes contain technical terms; and the units cited in specific rules.

DICTIONARIES

Agbegha, M.A. Ezọn mọ Beke mọ ten-eye: Ijaw-English vocabulary. Warri, Nigeria, 1961.

Kaliai, M.H.I. Nembe-English Dictionary. Ibadan, Nigeria: University of Ibadan, Institute of African Studies, 1964-66. 2 vols. [ED 034 190 Resumé only]

The approximately 6000 entries, in the standard orthography, include abbreviations which indicate the parts of speech, cross-references, the English gloss or explanation. Homographs appear as subentries arranged according to the parts of speech. The introduction contains a brief phonological outline of Nembe.

IKA

GRAMMARS

Williamson, Kay, ed. An introduction to Ìka and Ụkwuanị. (Occasional publication, No. 14) Ibadan, Nigeria. University of Ibadan, African Studies Institute, 1968. ii, 55 pp.

Presents the sound systems of both dialects, followed by two short stories for each with translations. Contains Ụkwuanị-English wordlist and verb paradigms.

IZI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Meier, Paul and Ingeborg Meier. Read and write Izi: it's easy. Abakaliki, Nigeria: Sold at the City Bookshop, 1967. 101 pp.

For self-instructional purposes. Designed to give reading and writing practice. Covers alphabet, vowels, consonants, word division, tone, and pronunciation. Grammar notes in traditional terms. There are completion and translation exercises. Included are proverbs, excerpts from speeches, short stories, and letters. Key to exercises. Izi-English dictionary containing 1500 words, and list of personal names.

GRAMMARS

Meier, Paul E. "Izi verb stems." Actes du 8e Congrés de la Société de l'Afrique Occidental: Annales de l'Université d'Abidjan. Serie H, Vol. I, pp. 60-75 (1971).

_____. "The relative clause in Izi." Journal of West African Languages 6.35-49 (Jan. 1969).

_____, Inge Meier and John Bendor-Samuel. A grammar of Izi, an Igbo language. (Publications in linguistics and related fields, No. 47) Norman, OK: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1975. 283 pp.

Utilizes a syntagmatic model, outlined and explained in the introduction. Deals with phonological and grammatical levels. Part I on phonological hierarchy. Part II deals with units above word rank. Part III deals with units at and below word rank. Chapter 19 consists of text. Phonemic and phonetic transcriptions. Bibliography.

JUKUN

GRAMMARS

Welmers, William E. Jukun of Wukari and Jukun of Takum. (Occasional Publications, No. 16) Ibadan, Nigeria: University of Ibadan, Institute of African Studies, 1968. v, 163 pp.

On the whole a structural description, including phonology and grammar. A few comparisons between the dialects. One chapter contains text in the Jukun of Takum with literal and approximate translations. Final chapter a vocabulary containing items from both dialects.

KANURI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Awobuluyi, Ọladele. Introductory Kanuri. Introduction au Kanouri. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1969. 298 pp. [ED 051 717]

Designed to give speech practice. In the 20 lessons, grammar is illustrated in dialogues, which are related to some aspect of the Peace Corps Volunteer's life in the 'field', and explained in structural terms. There are pronunciation, repetition, response, and substitution drills. Vocabulary list in each lesson. The Yerwa (Maiduguri) dialect is represented and is written in transcription. English and French are used as the language of instruction. English-Kanuri-French and Kanuri-English-French glossaries. [PC]

Ellison, R.E. An English-Kanuri Sentence Book. London, England: Crown Agents for the Colonies, 1937. 120 pp.

Intended as a supplement to Lukas' A Study of the Kanuri Language, Grammar and Vocabulary.

Raulin, George. Kanouri. San Francisco, CA: San Francisco State College Peace Corps Training Center, 1966. 112 pp.

Introductory lessons in Kanuri, designed for use with instructor and native informant. Includes dialogues, narratives, vocabulary lists, grammar explanation, drills and exercises. The Kanuri material is in transcription, and based on a Manga dialect of eastern Niger. No information on pronunciation. Translations are given in French, often repeated in English. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Benton, Philip A. The Languages and Peoples of Bornu: Being a Collection of the Writings of P.A. Benton. (Cass Library of African Studies. General Studies, No. 64) London, England: Cass, 1968. 2 vols.

Includes Kanuri readings and a Kanuri grammar.

Lukas, Johannes. A Study of the Kanuri Language, Grammar and Vocabulary. New York, NY: International Publications Services, 1967. xvii, 253 pp. [Reprint of London, 1937 ed.]

A pedagogical and reference grammar. Traditional in approach. About three-fourths of the book is given

over to description of rules governing the various parts of speech, followed by numerous examples with translations. The chapter on the verb contains full paradigms of all the tenses. The last part of the book contains a series of texts with translations and a Kanuri-English vocabulary. Each chapter has vocabulary lists and translation exercises. Phonemic transcription used throughout.

KAPSIKI

GRAMMARS

Smith, David. "The Kapsiki Language." Ph.D. Diss., Michigan State University, 1969.

KASENA

READERS

Kasem Reader I. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1933. 30 pp.

GRAMMARS

Callow, John. Collected field reports on the phonology of Kasem. (Collected Language Notes, 1) Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1965. iii, 95 pp. [Mimeo.]

Delafosse, M. Grammaire de la langue kasséna ou kassené parlée au pays des Gourounsi. n.p., 1923. xxx, 109 pp.

KONKOMBA

GRAMMARS

Steele, Mary and Gretchen Weed. Collected field reports on the phonology of Konkomba. (Collected Language Notes, 3) Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1967. 77 pp. [Mimeo.]

Tait, D. "Konkomba noun classes." Africa 24.130-48 (1954).

KPELLE (GUERZÉ)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Kohn, James J. et al. Beginning Kpelle: A Course for Speakers of English. San Francisco, CA: San Francisco State College, 1968. xxiv, 343 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Each of the 30 lessons contains a dialogue, a vocabulary list, grammar notes and drills, cultural material, and suggestions for conversation. Every fifth lesson is a review. Pronunciation information and drills in early lessons. The Kpelle material is in transcription. Suggestions for individual study in the field. [PC]

Welmers, William E. "A first course in Kpelle." In Mathematics and logic in the Kpelle language, by John Gay and William Welmers. (Occasional publications, no. 21) Ibadan, Nigeria: University of Ibadan, Institute of African Studies, 1971. 184 pp.

_____. Spoken Kpelle. Rev. ed. Monrovia, Liberia: Lutheran Mission in Liberia, 1955. 184 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Divided into part I, concentrating mostly on pronunciation, and part II, concentrating on grammar and vocabulary. In the 10 lessons, dialogues serve as a base for structured conversation. Grammar and vocabulary usage is explained in structural terms. There are pronunciation, tone, repetition, substitution, and transformation drills. Vocabulary is introduced in lists and illustrated in sentences. Kpelle material is in transcription with diacritics indicating tone.

GRAMMARS

Casthelain, J. and P. Lassort. La langue guerzé; Grammaire guerzé. (Mémoires, No. 20) Dakar, Senegal: Université de Dakar, Institut d'Afrique Noire, 1952. 423 pp.

Part I, by Casthelain, deals with phonetics, morphology and syntax. Also included is a French-Kpelle dictionary. Part II, by Lassort, is a traditional grammatical outline. Examples often in paradigm form.

Welmers, William E. "The Phonology of Kpelle." Journal of African Languages 1:1.69-93 (1962).

Westermann, Diedrich and Hans J. Melzian. The Kpelle Language in Liberia. Grammatical Outline, Colloquial Sentences, and Vocabulary. Berlin, Germany: D. Reimer, 1930. vi, 85 pp.

A pedagogical grammar, traditional in approach. Numerous examples and texts follow items described. Kpelle-English, English-Kapelle glossaries.

KUSAL(E) (KUSASI)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Spratt, Nancy. An introduction to learning Kusaal. Legon, Ghana: Institute of Linguistics, 1972. 42 pp. [Mimeo.]

GRAMMARS

Spratt, David and Nancy Spratt. Collected Field Reports on the Phonology of Kusal. (Collected Language Notes, no. 10) Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1968. 54 pp.

KWENI

GRAMMARS

Benoist, Jean Paul. Grammaire gouro (groupe Mandé -- Côte d'Ivoire). (Documents, No. 3) Lyon, France: Afrique et langage, 1971. 101 pp.

LEFANA

GRAMMARS

Höftman, Hildegard. The structure of the Lellemi language, with texts and glossary. Leipzig, E. Germany: Verlag Enzyklopädie, 1971. 130 pp.

For the specialist. Intended as an outline of the

dialect of Buem. Contains introduction, morphology of nouns, morphology of verbs, and sentence structure. Includes texts with line-by-line translations and Lelemi-English glossary.

LELA

GRAMMARS

Bon, Gilbert and F. Nicholas. Grammaire l'élé. Glossaire l'élé-français. (Mémoires, No. 24) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, 1953. x, 452 pp.

The first part is a descriptive grammar, structural in approach. In two parts: morphology, and syntax (word order and the way in which the different parts of speech function in a sentence). Examples follow items described, usually in list or table form, especially in Part I. The second part of the book contains a short grammatical outline, with more attention given to the phonology of Lela. Also included are texts with translations. The glossary contains approximately 4000 entries. Parts of speech indicated. French gloss or explanation. Homographs appear as separate entries. Different phonemic transcriptions used in the two parts.

LOBI

GRAMMARS

Lamothe, Charles. Esquisse du système grammatical lobi. (Recherches Voltaïques, 4) Paris, France: Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, and Ougadougou, Haute Volta: Centre Voltaïque de la Recherche Scientifique, 1966. 168 pp.

LIMBA

DICTIONARIES

Clarke, Mary Lane. A Limba-English Dictionary, with an English-Limba Section. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1971. [Reprint of Houghton, NY ed.]

Entries include parts of speech, illustrative phrases and sentences, synonyms, and some cultural information. Loanwords indicated. Pronunciation of Limba is explained in preface.

LOKO

GRAMMARS

Innes, Gordon."An outline grammar of Loko with texts." African Language Studies 5.115-73 (1964).

LOMA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Sadler, Wesley. Untangled Loma. Liberia: Lutheran Church Mission, 1951. 480 pp.

For use in a one-year intensive course and designed to give speech practice. Exercises.

Terplan, Elizabeth S. et al. Beginning Loma: A Course for Speakers of English. Rev. ed. San Francisco, CA: San Francisco State College, 1967. xviii, 426 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Thirty lessons, including five reviews. Each lesson contains a dialogue, useful expressions, vocabulary lists, grammar notes and drills, cultural material, and suggestions for conversation. Pronunciation information and drills in early lessons. The Loma material is in transcription. Appended are suggestions for individual study in the field, a Loma-English glossary, synopses of the phonology, morphology and syntax, and supplementary vocabulary lists. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Prost, André. La langue loghoma: esquisse grammaticale suivie de textes et d'un glossaire. (Documents linguistique, 13) Dakar, Senegal: Université de Dakar, Faculté des lettres, 1968.

Sadler, Wesley. "The Looma Language." Ph.D. Diss., Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1949.

MAMBILA

GRAMMARS

Perrin, Mona J. and Margaret V. Hill. Mambila (parler d'Atta): description phonologique. Yaoundé, Cameroon: Université Fédérale du Cameroun, Section de Linguistique Appliquée, 1969. 70 pp.

MANDARA

DICTIONARIES

Rapp, Eugen Ludwig, and Brigitta Benzing. Dictionary of the Glavdá language (Mandara Mountains of Northern Nigeria); with a short grammatical introduction. Frankfurt am Main, W. Germany: Bible Society, 1968-69. 2 vols.

Concise Glavda-English and English-Glavda-Yaghwatadaxa dictionary. Compound forms are listed separately. Cross references. Short survey of Glavda grammar with comparative Yaghwatadaxa forms. Simplified, practical orthography. Bibliography.

MANDEKAN (BAMBARA)

TEACHING MATERIALS

The Bambara Language. Bamako, Mali: Le Mission Protestante, 196-. 2 vols.

Traditional pedagogical textbook. Thirty lessons.

Brauner, Siegmund. Lehrbuch des Bambara. Leipzig, E. Germany: VEB Verlag Enzyklopädie, 1974. 163 pp.

Pedagogical grammar. Designed to give speech and reading practice. Twelve lessons include grammatical explanations in structural terms. Examples follow items described. Vocabulary lists. Translation exercises. Chrestomathy follows. Bambara-German glossary.

Houis, Maurice. Phrases Bambara (Les Types d'Enoncé). Lyon, France: Afrique et langage, 1969. [Mimeo.]

Contains numerous examples of sentences for tone study.

Hutchison, John P., Mamadou Kanté and Charles S. Bird. An ka baman kan kalan. Introductory Bambara, Parts I & II: Units 1-20. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, African Studies Center, 1975. v, 302 pp. [Originally

pub. in 1972, Peace Corps, Mali. 25 units.]

Designed to give speech practice. In the lessons, new material and grammar is introduced in dialogues and texts, and explained in notes. There are pronunciation, repetition, tone, transformation, substitution, and question-answer drills and exercises. Additional dialogues for practice. Vocabulary lists. Assignments for homework. Instructions to the instructor in French. Pronunciation also compared with French. [PC]

Kouloubali, Ntyo and Charles Bailleul. Bambara: 1-3. 1. Exercices sur les Sons. 2. Exercices sur les Tons. 3. Types de Phrases. Bamako, Mali: Centre d'Études de Langues, Mission Catholique de Faladyé, 1971.

Long, Ronald W. and Mamadou Koïta. Basic Bambara. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, African Studies Center, 1970. [Mimeo.]

Long, Ronald W. and Raoul S. Diomandé. Basic Dyula. First draft. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, Intensive Language Center, 1968. 309 pp. Grammatical Outline and Exercises. 55 pp. Introductory Exercise Book. 31 pp. Dialogs and Variations. 148 pp. Phrase Sheets. 9 pp. Intermediate Lessons I & II. 23 pp. Comprehension Workbook. 43 pp. Tapes. [ED 021 209]

Designed to give speech and comprehension practice. In the pre-speech phase the Grammatical Outline describes the phonology and basic grammatical structures. Explanations are followed by drills. The Exercise Book contains various exercises to be completed in writing. The active phase begins with Dialogs and Variations. Twenty lessons. Included in the lessons are also dialogues for comprehension. The Workbook accompanies this volume. The Intermediate Lessons are texts with literal and approximate interlinear translations. [NDEA]

Morse, Mary Lynn. Supplementary Exercises in Bambara. St. Croix, VI: Peace Corps Virgin Islands Training Center, 1967. 152 pp.

Introductory text containing 150 exercises. Exercises 1-10 are tone drills. The remaining units contain dialogues, vocabulary lists, grammar notes, drills, exercises, and suggestions for conversation. The Bambara material is presented in transcription. An introductory section treats pronunciation. [PC]

Sosseh, Hayib and Bob Ning Momodou. A Basic Mandinka Course with Cultural Notes. Banjul, The Gambia: U.S. Peace Corps, n.d. [197-]. 77 pp.

Designed to give speech and some writing practice. Lessons include dialogues, substitution, transformation, expansion, and question-answer drills and exercises. Cultural notes precede dialogues. [PC]

Spears, Richard A. Elementary Maninka-kan. Evanston, IL: Northwestern University, Dept. of Linguistics, 1973. vii, 249 pp. Tapes, transparencies. [Limited ed.] [ED 091 945]

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give comprehension practice. The 11 chapters include dialogues and narratives which are designed to enable the student to identify grammatical patterns. Each text is in transcription, phonetic transcription, base forms, literal translation, and approximate translation. Grammatical explanations are followed by drills. Comparative interdialect lexicon. [NDEA]

Stevick, Earl W. Bambara Basic Course. Prelim. ed. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1965. 168 pp. [FL 008 008]

Designed to give speech practice. In the 16 lessons, instructions are given both in English and in French. Grammar is illustrated in sentences, sometimes dialogues, and explained deductively. There are repetition and response drills. Structured conversations based on the basic sentences. Lesson One contains tone information and drills (recognition and repetition). Bambara material is in the standard orthography with tones indicated by diacritics. [FSI]

Travele, Moussa. Petit manuel français-bambara. Paris, France: P. Geuthner, 1947. iv, 89 pp.

Brief grammatical outline, dialogues, illustrative sentences, all topically arranged.

GRAMMARS

Bird, Charles Stephen. "Aspects of Bambara Syntax." Ph.D. Diss., University of California at Los Angeles, 1966. 156 pp.

Transformational in approach. Intended for the specialist.

Delaforge, M. Grammaire et méthode bambara. 7th ed. Paris, France: Charles-Lavauzelle, 1958. 202 pp.

Delafosse, Maurice. La langue mandigue et ses dialectes (malinké, bambara, dioula). (Bibliothèque de L'École Nationale des Langues Orientales Vivantes) Paris, France: P. Geuthner, 1929-1955. 2 vols.

Vol. 1 contains an introduction, grammar and French-Bambara dictionary. Vol. 2 includes Bambara-French dictionary. Dictionary includes grammar information, levels of usage, comparative information, and illustrative phrases and sentences.

Dumestre, G. Eléments de Grammaire Dioula. (Documents Linguistiques, 12) Abidjan, Ivory Coast: Université Abidjan, Institut de Linguistique Appliquée, 1970.

Quelques notions préliminaires à l'étude du Bambara. Faladyé via Bamako, Mali: Centre d'Études de Langues, Mission Catholique, n.d. [Mimeo.]

May be used for reference purposes. Analysis of basic Bambara syntactical structures.

Rowlands, E.C. A Grammar of Gambian Mandinka. (Occasional Monographs, No. 2) London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1969. 160 pp. [Reprint of 1959 ed.]

Structural description. Deals primarily with morphology. Chapter on orthography, word division and order, and chapters on accent and intonation. Grammatical items cross-referenced.

Spears, Richard A. "The structure of Faranah-Maninka." Ph.D. Diss., Indiana University, 1965. 215 pp.

Waldman, J.P. Études de langue bambara. Bamako, Mali: Ministère de l'enseignement Secondaire, supérieur et de la recherche Scientifique, École normale supérieur, 1972. 41 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Abiven, R.P. Dictionnaire français-malinké et malinké-

français, précédé d'un abrégé de grammaire malinkée. Conakry: Mission de PP. du Saint-Esprit, 1906. 222 pp.

Bazin, Hippolyte. Dictionnaire bambara-français, précédé d'un abrégé de grammaire bambara. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1965. xxiv, 693 pp. [Reprint of 1906 ed.]

Intended for the speaker of French. The approximately 5500 entries, in a transcription which employs the French alphabet, are followed by abbreviations indicating the parts of speech, the French gloss, and illustrative sentences. Subentries are used to separate the different meanings of an entry.

Lexique Bambara. Bamako, Mali: Ministère de l'Education Nationale, 1968. v, 33 pp.

This basic list of 3000 entries, intended as a lexicographical aid for Bambara-speaking alphabetizers, includes only words understood in all areas where the language is spoken. The French glosses are intended only as points of reference. Proper names and place names whose written forms reflect traditional usage are excluded. Loanwords are transcribed in Bambara. The orthography used is that specified in Decree No. 85/PG, May 26, 1967. The introduction explains the purpose of the list, and gives the orthographical conventions followed, in detail. The tone markings are based on the Bamako dialect.

Molin, R.P. Dictionnaire Bambara. Bamako, Mali: Mission Catholique, n.d.

Approximately 2500 words. No tone marking.

Nicol, Joseph. Français-Mandique lexique, Mandique-Français lexique. Washington, DC: U.S. Peace Corps, 1967. 2 vols. [PC]

Sauvant, F. Dictionnaire bambara-français et français-bambara. Algier, Algeria: Maison Carrée, 1926. 590 pp.

Travélé, Moussa. Petit dictionnaire français-bambara et bambara-français. Paris, France: P. Geuthner, 1944. xii, 281 pp. [Reprint of 1913 ed.]

Intended for the speaker of French. The two vocabulary lists are followed by six texts. The Bambara material is in transcription.

MANO

TEACHING MATERIALS

Neal, Vern C. et al. Beginning Mano: A Course for Speakers of English. San Francisco, CA: San Francisco College, Peace Corps Liberian Language Research Project, 1967. xiii, 390 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Each of the 30 lessons contains a dialogue, vocabulary list, grammar notes and exercises, culture notes, and suggestions for conversation. Every sixth lesson is a review. Pronunciation information and drills in early lessons. Suggestions for individual study in the field. The Mano material is in transcription. Appended are grammatical summary charts and a Mano-English glossary. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Becker-Donner, Etta. Die Sprache der Mano. (Sitzungberichte, 245. Bd. 5. Abhandlung) Vienna, Austria: Hermann Böhlaus, 1965. 214 pp.

MARGI

GRAMMARS

Hoffmann, Carl. A Grammar of the Margi Language. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1963. viii, 287 pp.

A reference grammar based on modern linguistic principles but utilizing traditional terminology. In two parts: a brief chapter on phonology (writing and alphabet, tones and sound changes), and morphology (parts of speech) and syntax (verbal and non-verbal sentences, and clauses). In this section about half the discussion is given over to the verb. Numerous examples (with translations) follow each item described. The accepted orthography, with modifications, is used throughout. Paragraphs are numbered continuously and cross-referenced where necessary. The author deals with three of the dialects of Margi. Bibliography.

MBEMBE

GRAMMARS

Barnwell, Katharine. "A grammatical description of Mbembe (Adun dialect) -- a Cross River language." Ph.D. Diss., University College, London, 1969. 314 pp.

MBUM

GRAMMARS

Hagège, Claude. Description phonologique du mbum. Informations. (Bulletin de la SELAF, 5) Paris, France: Société pour l'étude des langues africaines, 1968. 73 pp.

_____. La langue mbum de Nganha (Cameroun); phonologie - grammaire. (Bibliothèque de la SELAF 18-19) Paris, France: Société pour l'étude des langues africaines, 1970. 2 Vols. in 1.

Part I deals with phonology (phonemes, prosodic features, combinations). Part II is a grammar which discusses grammatical categories, syntax and functions. Maps.

DICTIONARIES

Fløttum, Suerre. Mbum-English vocabulary. Tibati, Cameroun: Mission Protestante Norvégienne, 1957. [Mimeo.]

MENDE

TEACHING MATERIALS

Berrian, Albert H. Mende Notebook with Tapes. Hampton, VA: Hampton Institute, 1966. 47 pp. Tapes.

Contains 15 lessons with dialogues and exercises. The Mende material is in transcription. A preliminary section provides a phoneme chart with some articulatory description and illustrations. [PC]

Innes, Gordon. A Practical Introduction to Mende. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, and Luzac, 1967. xii,

228 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. In the 47 lessons, grammar is illustrated in unrelated sentences, dialogues, and narratives and explained deductively in structural terms. There are pronunciation, repetition, response, parsing, substitution, and translation drills. Vocabulary is introduced in lists. Eastern Mende is represented. It is written in standard orthography with tones indicated by diacritics. Appended is a key to exercises.

Migeod, Frederic W. The Mende Language (Sierra Leone). London, England: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner and Co., 1908. 271 pp.

Contains a section on useful phrases. The grammar is explained traditionally by parts of speech. There are several reading passages and vocabulary lists, all in standard orthography. Intended for English speakers learning Mende.

Spears, Richard A. Basic Course in Mende. Evanston, IL: Northwestern University, 1967. 577 pp. [ED 012 018]

Designed to be taught by a linguist and informant to linguistically-oriented students. Audio-lingual skills emphasized, with special attention to morphophonemics and tone. Begins with a vocabulary list, and a list of 322 useful phrases presented in phonemic transcription, in phonetic tonal transcription, as base forms, in literal translation, and in English equivalents. Followed by 18 narratives in similar format designed to be accompanied by slides. The succeeding 22 units include substitution and combination drills on tonal and segmental morphophonemic variation, and grammatical explanations in structural terms. Two units deal with phonology, utilizing repetition and contrast drills. Mende-English glossary. [NDEA]

_____. Short Course in Mende. Evanston, IL: Northwestern University, 1967. 192 pp. [ED 012 019]

An abridgement of the author's Basic Course in Mende. Part I contains useful phrases and slide narratives with interlinear literary translations followed by approximate translations. Part II is various types of drills with special attention given to tone and morphophonemics. [NDEA]

GRAMMARS

Aginsky, E.G. A Grammar of the Mende Language. (Language Dissertation, No. 20) Baltimore, MD: Linguistic Society of America, 1935. 111 pp.

A linguistic grammar intended for the specialist. Structural in approach. Contains brief descriptions of the phonology and syntax of Mende with the major portion of the discussion given over to the morphology. Each grammatical category is briefly described and followed by extensive illustrations in the forms of lists and paradigms. The final section contains a text with interlinear and free translations, and analysis. Analysis is based on the speech of one informant. Phonemic transcription used throughout.

Crosby, K.H. An introduction of the study of Mende; with a phonetic introduction to Mende by Ida C. Ward. Cambridge, England: W. Heffer and Sons, 1944. vi, 65 pp.

Intended as a reference grammar. Traditional in approach. Tones indicated. Numerous examples follow items described.

Innes, Gordon. A Mende Grammar. London, England: MacMillan, 1962. 151 pp.

_____. The Structure of Sentences in Mende. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1963. 142 pp.

A descriptive grammar, structural in approach. In two parts: chapters 1 and 2 describe the morphology, and chapters 3 and 4 deal with the syntax. Numerous examples, with translations, follow items described, given in the standard orthography except where indicated. No phonological information given. Based on the Upper Mende dialect.

Sumner, A.T. A Handbook of the Mende Language. Freetown, Sierra Leone: Govt. Printing Office, 1917. xiv, 191 pp.

Part I is a pedagogical grammar, traditional in approach. Translation exercises. Part II contains reading lessons with notes. Part III is a Mende-English, English-Mende vocabulary.

DICTIONARIES

Eaton, M. A dictionary of the Mende language. Freetown, Sierra Leone, n.d.

Innes, Gordon. A Mende-English Dictionary. (West African Language Monograph Series) London, England: Cambridge University Press, 1969. x, 155 pp. [ED 027 535 Resumé only]

Based on the eastern dialect. The approximately 6500 entries are in the spelling used by the Sierra Leone Provincial Literature Bureau with tones indicated by letters. The word class for each headword is indicated.

MOBA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Jacobs, Gillian. Introductory Bimoba for schools (for English readers): reading, writing, grammar. Tamale, Ghana: Institute of Linguistics, 1971. 21 pp. [Mimeo.]

GRAMMARS

Jacobs, Gillian. Bimoba Syntax: A Syntagmatic Analysis. (Language Monographs, No. 1) Accra, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1970. v, 285 pp.

Prost, André. Grammaire moba. Dapango, Togo: Mission de Dapango, 1961.

MORÉ (MOSSI)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Lehr, Marianne, James E. Redden and Adama Balima. Moré Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Department of State, 1966. xxxix, 340 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO.] [ED 012 022]

Designed to give speech practice. In the 48 lessons, dialogues with buildups and narratives illustrate grammar and vocabulary and serve as a base for repetition, substitution, transformation, and response drills. Supplementary vocabulary lists. Grammar is explained

in structural terms. Units 38-48 provide graded comprehension practice in the form of narratives followed by questions. Some repetition, substitution, and transformation drills on tones and intonation accompanied by tonal information (units 3-4 and 17). Moré material is in transcription. An introductory section is a learner's synopsis of Moré phonology, orthography, and structure followed by general directions on the use of the material. The dialect is a mixture of the Tenkodogo and Ouagadougou dialects. Grammatical index. Moré-English glossary. [NDEA]

Smith, Vivian. Moré Grammar. Ouagadougou, Upper Volta: Assemblies of God, n.d.

READERS

Canu, Gaston. Contes Mossi actuels. Étude ethnolinguistique. (Mémoires, No. 82) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Fondamental d'Afrique Noire, 1969. 361 pp.

Part I is a brief outline of Moré phonology and prosody. Part II contains texts with literal French translations followed by an approximate translation and notes. Part III is an ethnological study of the texts. Moré-French dictionary. Bibliography.

GRAMMARS

Alexandre, Gustave. La langue möré. (Mémoires, No. 34) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, 1953. 2 vols.

Vol. I is a descriptive grammar with many illustrative examples, and a French-Moré dictionary. Vol. II contains a Moré-French dictionary.

Peterson, Thomas Howe. "Mooré Structure: A Generative Analysis of the Tonal System and Aspects of the Syntax." Ph.D. Diss., University of California at Los Angeles, 1971. 418 pp.

Part I deals with the tone system analyzed in detail from the word level to that of the sentence. Part II applies the notion of deep structure abstract verbs to the analysis of certain abstracts of Moré syntax. Appendix with text and translation of a Moré folktale.

Socquet, Msgr. Manuel-Grammaire Mossi. (Initiations et études africaines, 4) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, 1952. 87 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. In the 26 lessons, grammar is explained in traditional terms, and illustrated in sentences, followed by vocabulary lists and exercises. Appended is a table of verb conjugations.

DICTIONARIES

Hall, John Fenderson. Dictionary and Practical Notes, Mossi-English Languages. Ouagadougou, Upper Volta, 1950. 157 pp. Supplement to Mossi Dictionary. Ouagadougou, Haute Volta, 1953.

NAKANSE (GURENNE)

GRAMMARS

Rapp, Eugen L. Die Gurenne-Sprache in Nordghana. (Lehrbücher für das Studium der orientalischen und afrikanischen Sprachen, Bd. 11.) Leipzig, E. Germany: Verlag Enzyklopädie, 1966. 240 pp.

Part I contains a grammatical outline, and Part II is a Nakanse-German dictionary.

NUPE

GRAMMARS

Banfield, A.W. and J.L. MacIntyre. A Grammar of the Nupe Language, Together with a Vocabulary. London, England: Society for the Propagating of Christian Knowledge, 1915. viii, 186 pp.

In six parts. Traditional treatment of the parts of speech. Parts IV and V also include brief chapters on relationships, salutations and greetings, ranks and titles, and some proverbs and common sayings. Part VI is a vocabulary.

Smith, N.V. An Outline Grammar of Nupe. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1967. 56 pp.

A descriptive grammatical outline. Based on the "Scale and Category" theory of grammar. The structure of Nupe is hierarchically described in terms of five units: sentence, clause, group, word, and morpheme, such that each unit is composed integrally of one or more units of the rank immediately below it. Brief phoneme inventory. The dialect studied is standard Nupe as spoken in the urban areas of Bida Emirate. A phonemic transcription is used throughout. Bibliography.

_____. "The Phonology of Nupe." Journal of African Languages 6:2.153-69 (1967).

DICTIONARIES

Banfield, A.W. Dictionary of the Nupe Language. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1969. 2 vols. [Reprint of the Shonga, Niger, 1914-16 ed.]

Comprehensive Nupe-English, English-Nupe dictionary. Entries include parts of speech, illustrative phrases and sentences, cross-references, and some cultural information. Accents are marked.

PAJADE (BADJAARANKÉ)

GRAMMARS

Ducos, Gisèle. Structure du badiaranke de Guinée et du Sénégal (Phonologie, syntaxe). (Bibliothèque de la SELAF, 27-28) Paris, France: Société pour l'étude des langues africaines, 1971. 294 pp.

Grammatical analysis is based on moneme classes and categories. Includes noun and verb phrases, and morphology of nominals. Analysis of primary syntactic functions and independent phrases.

RED BOBO

GRAMMARS

Cuenot, M. "Essai de grammaire bobo-oule." Dakar, Senegal: Bulletin de l'Institut d'Afrique Noire 14.996-1045 (1952).

Manessy, Gabriel. Le bwamu et ses dialectes. (Faculté des Lettres et Sciences Humaines. Section de Langues et Littératures. Publications, 9) Dakar, Senegal: Université de Dakar, 1961. 178 pp. [O.P.]

_____. La morphologie de nom en bwamu (Bobo-oule); dialecte de Bondoukuy. (Faculté des Lettres et Sciences Humaines. Section de Langues et Littératures. Publications, 4) Dakar, Senegal: Université de Dakar, 1960. 318 pp. [O.P.]

RON

GRAMMARS

Jungraithmayr, Herrmann. Die Ron-Sprachen: Tschadohamitische Studien in Nordnigerien. (Afrikanistische Forschungen) Glückstadt, W. Germany: J.J. Augustin, 1970. xviii, 429 pp.

Structural analysis and comparison of the five Ron languages (Fyer, Bokkos, Daffo Butura, Sya (Sha), and Kulere. Numerous examples and texts with German translations, and glossaries of each Ron language (with German glosses). Some cultural information.

SEMBLA

GRAMMARS

Prost, André. Éléments de sembla; phonologie, grammaire lexique (Haute Volta: groupe mandé). (Documents, No. 5) Lyon, France: Afrique et Langage, 1971. 156 pp.

On the whole structural in approach. Part I includes phonology and grammar. Part II contains two texts with interlinear approximate translations, and a Sembla-French glossary. Phonetic transcription used throughout.

SENARI

GRAMMARS

Chéron, Georges. Le Dialecte Senoufo du Minianka (Grammaire, Textes et Lexiques). Paris, France: P. Geuthner, 1925. 167 pp.

Descriptive grammar. Texts with interlinear literal translations, followed by approximate translations. Some comparative dialectal variants of the same texts. Senari-French and French-Senari glossary.

Welmers, William E. "Notes on Two Languages in the Senufo Group: I. Senadi." Language 26:1.126-46 (1950).

SERER

GRAMMARS

Greffier, H. Grammaire sérère. Ngasobil, Senegal: Mission St. Joseph, 1901.

Pichl, Walter J. The Serer Language. Pittsburgh, PA: Duquesne University Press, 1970. 2 vols. [Vol. I, Grammar and dictionary, forthcoming.]

Vol. 2 contains texts of different dialects of Serer, with translations following.

DICTIONARIES

Dictionnaire sérère-français, d'après le manuscrit du Père Ezanno. Précédé d'un abrégé de grammaire sérère par le P. Greffier. Dakar, Senegal: M. Lefebvre, 1960. xx, 164 pp.

Greffier, P. Le H. Dictionnaire français-sérèr (idiome du Sine), précédé d'un abrégé de la grammaire sérère. Ngasobil, Senegal: Mission St. Joseph, 1901. 330 pp.

SISALA

GRAMMARS

Rowland, Ronald and Muriel Rowland. Collected field reports on the phonology of Sisala. (Collected Language Notes, No. 2) Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1965. iii, 50 pp. [Mimeo.]

DICTIONARIES

Rowland, Ronald. A short dictionary of Isaalang. Legon, Ghana: Institute of Linguistics, 1966. vi, 42 pp.

SONGHAI (DJERMA)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Cooper, Paul V. and Oliver Rice. Djerma Basic Course. Washington, DC: English Language Services, 1966. xviii, 297 pp. Tapes. [ELS now located in Portland, OR]

Designed to give speech practice. In the 30 lessons, grammar is illustrated in dialogues with buildups and briefly explained in structural terms. There are pronunciation and tone, response, substitution, and expansion drills. Djerma material is in a modified form of one of the standard orthographies. The dialect represented is that spoken in the Western region of Niger. Djerma-English-French, French-Djerma-English glossaries. [PC]

Konare, Mamdou. Sonrai Bais Course. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, 1971. 244 pp. [ED 055 498]

Designed to give speech practice. In the 30 lessons, grammar is introduced in short dialogues, and explained in structural notes. Lessons often contain several dialogues followed by drills (substitution, chain, question-answer, conversation, transformation, and translation). Brief description of phonology in introduction. Songhai-English vocabulary. [NDEA]

Practical Method for the Study of the Zerma Language. Rev. ed. Niamey, Niger: Mission Chrétienne d'Afrique, 1965. 127 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Twenty-five lessons and one review which includes multiple choice, matching, parsing and completion drills. Vocabulary is introduced in lists with indications of tone, accent and length of vowels. Grammar is explained in traditional terms and illustrated in unrelated sentences, dialogues and narratives. There are two-way translation drills.

Shopen, Timothy. Zerma Sanni Tira: Un cours accéléré de Zerma/An Intensive Course in Zerma. San Francisco, CA: San Francisco State College, Niger/Chad Peace Corps Training Program, 1966. 252 pp.

In the 15 lessons, grammar is explained in structural terms and illustrated in dialogues which serve as a base for structured conversation. Included are exercises and vocabulary lists. Both English and French are used as the language of instruction. The Djerma

material is in transcription. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Prost, André. La langue soñay et ses dialectes. (Mémoires, No. 47) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Fondamental d'Afrique Noire, 1956. 627 pp.

Part I is a grammar, traditional in approach. Numerous examples follow items described. Part II contains 22 short texts with notes and translations in French. Part III is a Songhai-French dictionary; Part IV, a French-Songhai word list. Appendix includes correspondence of words between Moré and Songhai.

Tersis, Nicole. Le dendi (Niger): Phonologie, lexique dendi-français, emprunts (arabe, hausa, français, anglais). (SELAF, 10) Paris, France: G. Klincksieck, publié avec le concours du CEDEV de l'Université de Liège, 1968. 87 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Marie, E. Vocabulaire français-djerma et djerma-français. Paris, France: Leroux, 1914. 210 pp.

Zimmerman, D.W. Dictionnaire français sonrai; dialecte de gao. N.p., 1968. 205 pp.

Primarily a glossary.

SONINKE

GRAMMARS

Daget, J., M. Konipo and M. Sanankova. La Langue Bozo. (Études Soudaniennes, I) Paris, France: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, 1953.

Monteil, Charles. La Langue des Bozo, Population de Pêcheures du Niger. (Extrait du Bulletin du Comité d'Études Historiques et Scientifiques de L'Afrique Occidentale Française, Tome 15, Nox. 2-3) Paris, France: Librairie Larose, 1933. 139 pp.

Includes a grammatical sketch in traditional terms, topical vocabulary lists, and a Bozo-French vocabulary.

DICTIONARIES

Monteil, Charles. "Vocabulaire soninké." Ed. by V. Monteil. Bulletin Institut Fondamentale d'Afrique Noire 28:3/4.676-89; 29:1/2.105-133 (1966-67).

SUPPIRE

GRAMMARS

Welmers, William E. "Notes on Two Languages in the Senufo Group: II. Sup'ide." Language 26:1.126-28, 26:4.494-531 (1950).

SUSU

TEACHING MATERIALS

Friedländer, Marianne. Lehrbuch des Susu. Leipzig, E. Germany: VEB Verlag Enzyklopädie, 1974. 168 pp.

In the introduction the phonetic structure of Susu is described. Each of the 16 lessons contains texts, extensive grammar notes, vocabulary lists, and exercises. Chrestomathy includes texts with notes, but no translations. Susu-German glossary. Bibliography.

Sangster, Linda and Emmanuel Faber. Susu Basic Course. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, Intensive Language Training Center, 1968. 408 pp. [ED 029 296 MF only] [New ed. forthcoming 1977]

Designed to give speech practice. In the pre-speech phase, emphasis is on passive recognition. Consists of an outline of phonology with translation and identification drills on sounds, tones, and intonation. In the 84 lessons of the active phase, dialogues serve as a base for structured conversation. Grammar explained in structural terms. There are completion, response, translation, and sentence construction drills. Transcription also used in Part I. English and French are the languages of instruction. Susu-English-French glossary. [NDEA]

_____. Susu Intermediate Course. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, Intensive Language Training Center, 1969. 242 pp. [ED 029 297 MF only]

Designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 25 lessons, grammar is illustrated in dialogues and brief narratives and explained in structural terms. There are comprehension drills. Lists of compound or derived words and of foreign words in each lesson. Susu-English glossary. [NDEA]

GRAMMARS

Houis, Maurice. Étude descriptive de la langue susu. (Mémoires, No. 67) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, 1963. 183 pp.

Part I deals with phonology (phonemes, prosodic features, combinations). Part II is a grammar (morphology, lexical bases, nominals, verb forms, functions, independent phrases). Bibliography, indices, map.

DICTIONARIES

Lacan, Ph. Grammaire et dictionnaire français-soussou et soussou-français. Paris, France: Librairie d'Amérique et d'Orient, 1942. 399 pp.

Intended for the speaker of French. The first part of the book is a brief reference grammar in traditional terms followed by a list of useful sentences, fables, and poems. The French-Susu section of the dictionary contains approximately 4500 entries and the Susu-French section approximately 4000. Abbreviations indicate the parts of speech indicated. Illustrative sentences.

TAMPRUSI

GRAMMARS

Bergman, Richard, Ian Gray and Clare Gray. Collected field reports on the phonology of Tampulma. (Collected language notes, no. 9) Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1969. viii, 53 pp.

TEMNE

TEACHING MATERIALS

Alleyne, Marvin C., Larry G. Hutchinson and James L. Wilson. Temne Structural Drills and Analytical Notes. First Draft. Bloomington, IN: Peace Corps Project, Indiana University, 1965. 77 pp. Tapes.

Designed to give speech practice. Twelve units. Extensive phonological and grammatical notes in struc-

tural terms. Vocabulary of the same structural class is introduced in lists. There are repetition, substitution, transformation drills and exercises in translating, and in marking morphophonemic alternations and tones. Temne material is in phonemic transcription with diacritics indicating tone. Key to exercises. [PC]

Berrian, Albert H. Temne Notebook with Tapes. Hampton, VA: Hampton Institute, 1966. 72 pp. Tapes.

Each of the 12 lessons contains a dialogue or narrative, notes and exercises. A preliminary section provides an outline of phonology in articulatory terms. The Temne material is in transcription. Appended are Temne-English vocabulary lists and supplementary exercises. [PC]

Coleman, William L. and Panda Kamara. Temne Short Basic Course. Rev. ed. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, African Studies Program, 1967. 190 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. 115 short cycles consisting of repetition and response drills followed by conversations built on similar vocabulary and syntactic patterns. Brief grammatical explanations in structural terms. No treatment of tone. Temne material is in transcription. Instructions to the teacher and students in the cycles. [PC]

Sumner, A.T. A Handbook of the Temne Language. Freetown, Sierra Leone: Government Printer, 1922. 157 pp.

GRAMMARS

Hutchinson, Larry G. "Pronouns and Agreement in Temne." Ph.D. Diss., Indiana University, 1969. 127 pp.

Scott, J.P.L. An Introduction to Temne Grammar. Freetown, Sierra Leone: Government Printer, 1956. 40 pp.

Intended for the beginning student. Brief descriptions of the parts of speech followed by examples. Temne-English vocabulary.

Thomas, Northcote W. Timne Grammar and Stories. Vol. III of Anthropological Report on Sierra Leone. Westport, CT: Negro Universities Press, 1970. [Reprint of London, 1916 ed.]

Wilson, W.A. An Outline of the Temne Language. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1961. 63 pp.

A linguistic description. Structural in approach. Brief outlines of nouns, verbs, adjectives, numerals, genitives, etc., are given. Also included are discussions of the sounds and tonal system, word division, the concord system, word categories, place, time, ideophones, etc., in Temne. About one-third of the book is appendices; they include discussion and tables on concord exponents, the common features of the Temne-Baga-Landuma languages, and a Temne text in transcription and translation. On the whole, examples follow items described and are given in a modified form of the accepted orthography. The dialect described is Sanda and analysis is based mainly on the speech of one informant.

DICTIONARIES

Thomas, Northcote W. Timne-English Dictionary. Vol. II of Anthropological Report on Sierra Leone. Westport, CT: Negro Universities Press, 1970. [Reprint of London, 1916 ed.]

TERA

GRAMMARS

Newman, Paul. A Grammar of Tera: Transformational Syntax and Texts. (Publications in linguistics, V. 57) Los Angeles, CA: University of California Press, 1970. vii, 263 pp.

TIV

READERS

Abraham, Roy Clive. Tiv Reader for European Students. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1968. vii, 82 pp. [Reprint of London, 1940 ed.]

An intermediate reader with selections from biblical texts, fables, stories, and proverbs accompanied by a literal translation. The Tiv material is in the script used by the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures and in the script employed by the Dutch Reformed Mission. Appended are some grammatical notes.

GRAMMARS

Abraham, Roy Clive. The Grammar of Tiv. Kaduna, Nigeria: Government Printer, 1933. 213 pp.

Part I deals with the parts of speech. Part II is a text in Tiv with translations and notes. Part III is a Tiv-English dictionary. Entries include grammatical and cultural information, the latter primarily in the form of illustrative sentences. Phonetic transcription used throughout; tones marked through a system of capitalization.

_____. Principles of Tiv. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1968. viii, 102 pp. [Reprint of London, 1940 ed.]

A short pedagogical grammar intended for the beginner. Utilizes the traditional approach to Bantu languages in introducing grammatical categories. A fair number of examples follow each item discussed, and are given in the official orthography developed by the International Institute of African Languages and Cultures. Translations provided. English and Tiv indices.

Terpstra, Gerard and Peter Ipema. Tiv grammar notes. Rev. ed. Mkar, Sudan United Mission, 1968. [Mimeo.] [1st ed., 1961]

DICTIONARIES

Abraham, Roy Clive. A Dictionary of the Tiv Language (of Nigeria). Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1968. ix, 331 pp. [Reprint of London, 1940 ed.]

A Tiv-English dictionary. The approximately 9000 entries are arranged according to their initial consonants. The entries include grammatical information and illustrative sentences.

Maher, H. Scholar's vocabulary English-Tiv. Zaria, Nigeria: Gaskiya Corporation, 1961.

Malherbe, W.A. Tiv-English Dictionary with Grammar,

Notes and Index. Lagos, Nigeria: Government Printer, 1931. xxxix, 207 pp.

Entries in Tiv-English dictionary include grammatical information and illustrative sentences. Alternate forms of words are listed separately and cross-referenced. English-Tiv index.

Terpstra, Gerard. English-Tiv Dictionary. (Occasional Publications, No. 13) Ibadan, Nigeria: University of Ibadan, Institute of African Studies, 1968. 120 pp. [1st pub. 1959]

Approximately 6000 entries. Entries include parts of speech, illustrative phrases and some English terms or explanations which help clarify the semantic area of the entries. The tone markings are those used in Abraham, A Dictionary of the Tiv Language.

TURA

GRAMMARS

Barth, Thomas. "L'Enoncé Toura: Côte d'Ivoire." Ph.D. Diss., University of Geneva, Switzerland, 1971. 491 pp.

VAGALA

GRAMMARS

Crouch, M. and N. Smiles. Phonology of Vagala. (Collected language notes, no. 4) Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana, Institute of African Studies, 1966. 44 pp.

VAI

GRAMMARS

Koelle, S.W. Outlines of a grammar of the Vei language. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1968. vi, 227 pp. [Reprint of London, 1854 ed.]

Descriptive grammar. About one-third of the book is a Vai-English vocabulary.

WOLOF

TEACHING MATERIALS

Nussbaum, Loren, William W. Gage and Daniel Varre. Dakar Wolof: A Basic Course. Based on Introductory Course in Dakar Wolof, by William A. Stewart et al. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1970. xv, 455 pp. [ED 051 686]

Designed to give speech practice. Microwave approach. In the 74 lessons, the even-numbered lessons focus on social interaction (e.g. greetings, classroom phrase, environment, etc.), while the odd-numbered lessons concentrate on the development of grammatical understanding of the language. Lessons are composed of M-phases (mimicry for pronunciation and memorization), C-phases (conversational fragments), and exercises for additional practice in mimicry and manipulation. Pronunciation information and drills. Notes on Wolof grammar provided in a separate section. Wolof-English vocabulary. [NDEA]

Nussbaum, Loren. A Teaching Aid to Spoken Dakar Wolof. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1966. 61 pp.

To be used in conjunction with Introductory Course in Dakar Wolof, by William A. Stewart. Microwave format. In the 38 cycles, the Wolof material is in transcription. No grammar or pronunciation information. [PC]

Sosseh, Hayib. Bob Ag Momodou. A basic Olof course with cultural notes. Banjul, The Gambia: U.S. Peace Corps, n.d. [197-]. 79 pp.

Designed to give speech practice of Gambian Wolof. Lessons include dialogues, and substitution, transformation, expansion, and comprehension drills and exercises. Cultural information in each lesson. [PC]

Stewart, William A., Cheikh Babou, Dorothy Pedtke et al. Introductory Course in Dakar Wolof. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1966. v, 398 pp. [O.P.] [ED 012 456]

Designed to give speech practice. In the five lessons, grammar is explained in structural notes followed by extensive drills (repetition, translation, completion, substitution, response, and transformation). Introductory chapter contains a complete descriptive analysis of the phonology followed by drills on each phoneme. Attention given to vowel harmony. Appendices cover: social relationships and kin; ethnic groups and religions of Senegal; names of cities in Senegal; foreign place names; the months of the year; a list of stative verbs; pronoun sets; verbal constructions. Wolof-English, English-Wolof glossaries. [PC]

READERS

Diop, A. and O. Dia. Choix de textes wolof, transcrits et traduits d'après des enregistrements réalisés par le C.L.A.D. (CLAD 32) Dakar, Senegal: Centre Linguistique Appliquée de Dakar, 1967.

GRAMMARS

Diagne, Pathé. Grammaire de wolof moderne. Paris, France: Présence africaine, 1971. 229 pp.

Description of phonology. The grammar section is divided into two parts: structure of monemes and syntagms, and analysis of the internal structure of discourse.

Feagin, Louise Crawford. "The Phonology of the Word in Dakar Wolof." M.S. Thesis, Georgetown University, 1966. iv, 111 pp.

Also includes a sociolinguistic section on the Wolof language community, and some texts with translations.

Gamble, D. "Elementary Wolof grammar." In Wolof et Sérèr, ed. by G. Manessy and S. Sauvageoty. (Publications, No. 12) Dakar, Senegal: Université de Dakar, Section de Langues et Litteratures, 1958. pp. 131-61.

Manessy, Gabriel and S. Sauvageot, eds. Wolof et Sérèr: Études de phonétique et de grammaire descriptive. Dakar, Senegal: Publications de la Section de Langues et Littératures, 1963. xxii, 307 pp.

Collection of articles by various authors. Bibliography.

Sauvageot, Serge. Déscription synchronique d'un dialecte wolof: le parler du dyolof. (Mémoires, No. 73) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Fondamental d'Afrique Noire,

1966. 274 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Guy-Grand V.J. Dictionnaire français-volof, précédé d'un abrégé de la grammaire volofe. Rev. by R.P.O. Abiven. Dakar, Senegal: Mission Catholique, 1923. 627 pp.

Kobès, A. Dictionnaire wolof-français. Rev. ed. and enl. by R.P.O. Abiven. Dakar, Senegal: Hunsec, 1923. viii, 383 pp.

YOM

GRAMMARS

Beacham, Charles G. "The Phonology and Morphology of Yom." Ph.D. Diss., Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1968. 246 pp.

YORUBA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Awobuluyi, Oladele. Peace Corps Yoruba Course. New York, NY: Columbia University, The Institute for Education in Africa, Teachers College, 1965. vi, 367 pp. Tapes.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. Microwave format. In cycles 5-172, grammar and vocabulary are illustrated in repetition and response drills later combined into dialogues, in which material is personalized and localized. Occasional brief grammatical explanations in structural terms. Cycles 173-182 contain narratives accompanied by vocabulary lists. Cycles 1-4 contain tone drills (repetition and recognition). The Yoruba material is in a modified version of the standard orthography. Grammatical and topical indices. [PC]

Lasebikan E.L. and L.J. Lewis. A Yoruba Revision Course. Ibadan, Nigeria: Oxford University Press, 1968. 84 pp. [First published 1949]

Twenty-five pairs of varied passages to be translated into and from English. Based on the passages are questions on grammar, syntax and comprehension.

McClure, H. David and John Oyewale. Yoruba: Intermediate Texts. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1967. ix, 254 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO.] [ED 012 899]

May be used for self-instructional purposes after mastering an introductory Yoruba textbook and before or along with Wolff's Second-Year Yoruba. Emphasis is on vocabulary and fluency. The text is based on a series of brief monologues, recorded impromptu. Materials are meant to be used in supplementary and auxiliary function, the recordings forming the central part of the course. Each monologue is represented two or three times, with minor variations in each version. Included are drills in marking tones, completion, and response drills. Orthography is on the whole standard Yoruba with tones indicated by diacritics. [FSI/PC]

Odujinrin, J.S.A. Modern Lessons in Yoruba. Lagos, Nigeria: Academy Press, 1970. 2 vols.

Intended for secondary school students who are familiar with Yoruba. May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to reinforce basic elements of Yoruba grammar. Lessons include brief normative explanations followed by numerous exercises. Key to exercises in both volumes.

Ogunbọwale, P.O. The essentials of the Yoruba language. London, England: University of London Press, 1970. 206 pp.

Intended as a practical introduction to the Yoruba language. Part I deals with pronunciation. Part II is given over to grammar. Structural in approach. Numerous examples follow items described. Part III contains riddles and proverbs, figures of speech, and poetry. Tone marked throughout. Appendices include words spelled alike but different in meaning, loan words, and the phonology of standard Yoruba. Bibliography.

Rowlands, E.C. Teach Yourself Yoruba. London, England: The English Universities Press, 1969. vi, 276 pp.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 39 lessons, grammar is explained in traditional terms and illustrated in unrelated sentences. There are reading and translation drills. Yoruba material in the standard orthography with tones marked. Appended are narratives, their English translation, a key to exercises, and a Yoruba-English glossary.

Stevick, E.W. and Olaleye Aremu. Yoruba Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1963. 343 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO.] [ED 010 462]

Designed to give speech practice. In the 49 lessons, grammar is introduced in dialogues with buildups, and explained in structural terms. Exercises on the whole are repetition and chain-response types. Introductory lessons include pronunciation information, and three series of tone drills. Lessons 1-20 concentrate in those aspects of grammar which involve changes in tone and vowel length. Yoruba material is in two columns, one in transcription with diacritics to indicate tone and vowel length, and the other in the typical spelling used by educated speakers. Yoruba-English glossary. [NDEA/FSI]

Ward, Ida C. An Introduction to the Yoruba Language. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1956. viii, 255 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. In the 20 lessons and in the appended 12 texts, Yoruba material is in transcription with tones diagrammed. Grammar is presented in structural terms and illustrated in numerous sentences. There are tone, sentence construction and substitution drills. Lesson One outlines the phonology in detail. The 12 texts are conversations, stories, proverbs, and prayers. Analysis is based mainly on the speech of students at St. Andrew's College, Oyo. Appendices also cover: summary of tone changes, formation of nouns, tones of nouns of three and four syllables, and Yoruba spelling.

Watkins, Mark Hanna. Experimental exercises in Yoruba. Prelim. ed. Washington, DC: Howard University, African languages and Area Center, n.d. [NDEA]

Welmers, William E. and Kenneth C. Hill. A Start in Yoruba. Prelim. rev. ed. Los Angeles, CA: Nigeria Training Project, UCLA, 1964. iii, 66 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. The 12 lessons

include notes and drills on grammar and pronunciation. The Yoruba material is in transcription. [PC]

Wolff, Hans. Beginning Yoruba. East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University, African Studies Center, 1963. vii, 180 pp. [ED 013 443 Resumé only]

Designed to give the student a good command of the basic grammatical structures of Yoruba, and speaking practice. In the five units, lessons consist of notes and explanatory material in structural terms, and illustrated in the repetition exercises that follow. There are also some question-answer and transformation exercises. Unit One is pronunciation information and drills. Yoruba material in phonemic transcription with standard orthography also used starting with Unit Three. [NDEA]

_____ and J. Omotoso Aremu. Second-year Yoruba. East Lansing, MI: Michigan State University, African Studies Center, 1964. 2 vols. Vol. II, Informant's Manual. Tapes. [ED 012 799]

Designed to give speech and conversational practice. Five units consisting of five lessons each. Unit One is primarily review and intensive drills introduced in the latter lessons of Beginning Yoruba. Units 2-4 include conversations and extended discourse with translations accompanied by culture notes. Grammatical information occasionally provided in notes. There are repetition, conversation, and identification exercises. Unit Five is an introduction to reading and writing Yoruba. Yoruba-English glossary. [NDEA]

GRAMMARS

Bamgbose, Ayo. A Grammar of Yoruba. (West African Language Monographs, 5) London, England: Cambridge University Press and Ibadan Institute of African Studies, 1966. xii, 175 pp.

A descriptive grammar based on the "Scale and Category" theory of grammar. Part I is a general introduction to the Yoruba language, a review of previous grammatical studies, and a phonological outline. Part II is the theory upon which the grammar is based. Part III is the grammatical description which covers such topics as free and dependent clauses, verbal and nominal groups, and the frequencies of classes and structures. Numerous examples follow items described. An analyzed text. The Yoruba material is in a phonemic transcription.

_____. A short Yoruba grammar. Ibadan, Nigeria, and London, England: Heinemann, 1968. 71 pp.

Pedagogical grammar, on the whole structural in approach. Illustrative phrases. Exercises and Key. Subject index.

_____, ed. The Yoruba Verb Phrase. Ibadan, Nigeria: Ibadan University Press, 1972. vii, 196 pp.

A collection of articles by various authors. Bibliography.

Courtenay, Karen R. "A Generative Phonology of Yoruba." Ph.D. Diss., University of California at Los Angeles, 1968.

Delano, Oloye Issac. Atúmọ̀ edo Yoruba. (A Short Yoruba Grammar and Dictionary.) London, England: Oxford University Press, 1958. lxviii, 209 pp.

Delano, Isaac O. A modern Yoruba grammar. London, England: T. Nelson, 1965. xiv, 185 pp.

de Gaye, J.A. and W.S. Beecroft. Yoruba Grammar. London, England: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1964. 96 pp.

A pedagogical grammar. Traditional in approach. The parts of speech are described. Each lesson has an English-Yoruba vocabulary list and translation and reading exercises. Examples follow items described with translations. Brief chapters on word building and derivational verbs. English-Yoruba glossary.

Oyelaran, Olasope O. "Yoruba Phonology." Ph.D. Diss., Stanford University, 1971.

DICTIONARIES

Abraham, Roy Clive. Dictionary of Modern Yoruba. London, England: University of London Press, 1958. xli, 776 pp.

A comprehensive Yoruba-English dictionary. Entries cover idioms, proverbs, riddles, and detailed descriptions of the flora and fauna with 400 pictures. Historical, religious, and ethnological information provided and extensively cross-referenced. Illustrative sentences. An introductory section contains pronunciation and grammatical information in structural terms. Yoruba material is modified slightly, with tones indicated by diacritics. A list of addenda contains words discovered after the text of the dictionary was completed.

Crowther, S. et al. A Dictionary of the Yoruba Language. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1956. 461 pp.

English-Yoruba, Yoruba-English dictionary.

Delano, Chief I.O. A Dictionary of Yoruba Monosyllabic Verbs. Ile-Ife, Nigeria: University of Ife, Institute of African Studies, 1969. 2 vols.

Wakeman, C. et al. A Dictionary of the Yoruba Language. 2nd ed. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1957. 361 pp. [1st pub. Lagos, 1913]

Yoruba-English, English-Yoruba dictionary. Indication of tone in Yoruba-English section.

Bantu

BAMUM

GRAMMARS

Homburger, L. Éléments de la langue bamoun. Paris, France: Bibliothèque de la Mission Évangélique de Paris, n.d. [Manuscript]

Ward, Ida C. "The phonetic structure of Bamum." Bulletin of School of Oriental and African Studies 9.423-38 (1938).

BANGI

GRAMMARS

Whitehead, John. Grammar and dictionary of the Bobangi

language as spoken over a part of the Upper Congo, West Central Africa. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1964. xxi, 499 pp. [Reprint of London, 1899 ed.]

The grammar deals with orthography (with many phonetic observations), morphology, and syntax. Part II is a Bobangi-English, English-Bobangi dictionary. Entries include synonyms and references to the grammar.

BEMBA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Belin, Jean Paul. Learn Bemba by Speaking It. Abercorn, Zambia: White Fathers, 1959. 319 pp. [O.P.]

Designed to give speech practice. Lessons include conversations and dialogues illustrating grammatical points. There are completion, question-answer, formation, and transformation exercises. Few explanations and minimal English text.

A Bemba Assimil; untangle Bemba yourself and learn it by speaking with the help of tapes. Chinsali, Zambia: Ilondola Language Center, n.d. 114 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Part I is on pronunciation and tonality. Part II contains lessons on the first class of nouns, i.e. people. Part III is on other classes of words, i.e. things and animals. Exercises.

Hoch, F. Bemba Grammar and Exercises. Chinsali, Zambia: White Fathers, 1963. 186 pp. [O.P.]

Lammond, William. Lessons in Bemba. 8th ed. Lusaka, Zambia: Pub. Bureau, 1957. 140 pp. Supplement. 1955. 84 pp. [Also published as Lessons in Chibemba, being one hundred easy graded lessons. 2nd rev. ed. Brussels, Belgium, 1930. 160 pp.]

Ninety-eight lessons with grammatical explanations in traditional terms. Numerous examples. Based on the Bemba spoken in the Fort Rosebery and Kawambwa Districts. Bemba-English glossary.

Sadler, Wesley. Untangled Cibemba. Kitwe, Zambia: United Church of Central Africa, 1964. [O.P.]

GRAMMARS

Doke, Clement M. Textbook of Lamba Grammar. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1938. viii, 484 pp. [O.P.]

A descriptive grammar, traditional in approach. Deals with phonology, morphology, syntax, and idioms. Numerous examples follow items described. General introduction to the language.

Givón, Talmy. Studies in ChiBemba and Bantu Grammar. (Studies in African Linguistics. Supplement, 3) Los Angeles, CA: University of California, 1972. vii, 247 pp.

Mann, Michael. "Bemba: A sketch of the Language." In Language in Zambia, ed. by Sirarpi Ohannessian, Mubanga Kashoki et al. London, England: Oxford University Press, forthcoming. Part 1: Chapter IV.

Van Sambeek, J. A Bemba grammar, as arranged by W.A.R. Gorman and amended by Publications Bureau staff. Cape Town, South Africa: Longmans, Green, and Joint Publications Bureau, Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland [Zambia], 1955. 117 pp.

Reference grammar compiled as an aid for those who have already had two years practice in speaking the language. Appended are 12 tables on nominal classes, numerals, kinship terms, greetings and courtesy formulae, etc.

DICTIONARIES

Acker, Vanden. Bemba-English Dictionary. Zambia: Chilubula, 1947.

Doke, Clement M. English-Lamba Vocabulary. 2nd ed. rev. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1963. v, 179 pp.

Intended for missionaries and for helping Lambas in acquiring a knowledge of English. The English entry is followed by the part of speech and the Lamba gloss in standard orthography. When the plural of a noun is different from the singular, the plural is provided. The perfect or modified stem of verbs is given after its ordinary form. Foreign acquisitions are included.

Hoch, E., comp. Bemba Pocket Dictionary: Bemba-English and English-Bemba. Abercorn, Zambia: White Fathers, 1960. 239 pp.

Intended for speakers of both languages. English-Bemba section contains illustrative phrases. Appendix includes grammatical tables, kinship terms, courtesy phrases and greetings, and topical vocabularies.

Madan, Arthur Cornwallis. Lala-Lamba-Wisa and English, English and Lala-Lamba-Wisa Dictionary. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1913. 328 pp.

The White Fathers' Bemba-English Dictionary. Rev. ed. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1954. vi, 829 pp.

Contains approximately 17,500 entries, arranged alphabetically according to prefix except for verbs, which are listed without the prefix -uku. Subentries are arranged by meaning. Examples of usage and grammatical notes are provided. The entries also include cultural information where this helps to clarify meaning. The orthography used is the Roman alphabet with supplementary diacritics.

BWA

GRAMMARS

Gerard, R.P. La Langue Lebeo. Grammaire et Vocabulaire. (Bibliothèque - Congo, XIII) Brussels, Belgium, 1924. 223 pp.

CHOKWE

GRAMMARS

Eynde, Karel van den. Fonologie en morfologie van het Cokwe. (Verzameling van het Instituut voor Afrikanistiek, no. 2) Leuven, Belgium: Universiteit te Leuven, 1960. 144 pp.

Horton, A.E. A Grammar of Luvale. (Bantu Grammatical Archives, II) Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1949. vi, 221 pp.

For use as a reference grammar for the student of

the spoken language. Structural in its approach. The contents of the book cover the phonology, formation and use of the various parts of speech. Each grammatical section contains numerous examples with translations. Also included are cross-references. Comprehensive index. The main dialect used is that of the yaka-sango, the prestige dialect.

Santos, Eduardo dos. Elementos de gramática quioca. Lisbon, Portugal: Agência-Geral do Ultramar, 1962. 220 pp.

Descriptive grammar. Deals with phonetics and morphology. Romanized transcription used throughout.

White, C.M.N. "An Outline of Luvale Grammar." In Language in Zambia, ed. by Sirarpi Ohannessian, Mubunga Kashoke et al. London, England: Oxford University Press, forthcoming. Part 1: Chapter IX.

DICTIONARIES

Horton, A.E. Dictionary of Luvale-English. Alto Zambezi: Kavungu Mission, and El Monte, CA: Lithographed by Rahn Bros. Print. and Lithographing Co., 1953. iv, 434 pp. [O.P.]

Entries include synonyms, cross-references and illustrative phrases.

Macjannet, Malcolm Brooks. Chokwe-English, English-Chokwe Dictionary and Grammar Lessons. 2nd ed. Biula, C.P.: The Author, 1949. 234 pp.

The Chokwe-English glossary contains approximately 5000 entries and the English-Chokwe section approximately 4500 entries. Parts of speech indicated. The grammatical section (38 pp.) is in traditional terms.

shiCHOPI

GRAMMARS

Lanham, L.W. A Study of Gitonga of Inhambane. (Bantu Language Studies, I) Johannesburg, South Africa: University of Witwatersrand, 1955. viii, 264 pp.

Santos, Luíz Feliciano dos. Gramática da língua chope. Lourenço Marques, Mozambique: Imprensa Nacional de Moçambique, 1941. 306 pp.

Traditional reference grammar. Deals with phonology and morphology. Examples are often in paradigm form.

DICTIONARIES

Santos, Luís F. dos. Dicionário português-chope e chope-português. Lourenço Marques, Mozambique: Imprensa Nacional de Moçambique, 1950. 223 pp.

Linguistic and ethnologic information in introduction.

Smyth, William E. and John Matthews. A Vocabulary with a Short Grammar of Xilenge, the Language of the People Commonly Called Chopi, Spoken on the East Coast of Africa Between the Limpopo River and Inhambane. London, England: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, 1902. 91 pp.

The vocabulary, pp. 1-46, lists approximately 2000 entries arranged alphabetically according to the base. The grammatical outline is in traditional terms with tables, paradigms and examples. Grammar index.

DUALA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Le Basaa par les textes: Manuel de Basaá à l'usage des Classes de 4ème et 3ème. Douala, Cameroon: Collège Libermann, forthcoming.

Gilman, Charles. Douala Additional Cycles. Boston, MA: Boston University, 1967. 20 pp.

Intended for use following Ngoundo, Douala: Une Introduction à la Geographie du Cameroun. Contains 16 microwave cycles, each with sections for mimicry and conversation. The Duala material is presented without translation. [PC]

Koki Ndombo, Paul, P. Lemb, and F. de Gastines. Le Basaá par la grammaire; manuel de Basaá à l'usage des classes de 6e et 5e. Douala, Cameroon: Collège Libermann, 1971. 138 pp.

Traditional school text designed to give reading, writing, and some speech practice. Sixty-one lessons, each typically including texts, brief grammatical definitions, vocabulary lists and exercises.

Lemb, Pierre et al. Notes et exercices complementaires pour l'étude de la grammaire basaa. Douala, Cameroon: Collège Libermann, 1971. 41 pp.

Meinhof, Carl. Die Sprache der Duala in Kamerun. (Deutsche Kolonialsprachen, Bd. 4) Berlin, Germany: D. Reimer, 1912. xv, 119 pp.

Pedagogical grammar intended as an introduction to the language and designed to give speech practice. Grammar is introduced in vocabulary lists and illustrated in texts, with occasional notes. Repetition and translation exercises. German-Duala, Duala-German vocabulary.

Moreton, Rebecca L., M. Bôt Ba Njock et al. Cameroon Basaa. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1968. iv, 471 pp. [ED 048 593 MF only] [French version: Je parle Basaa; Manuel d'initiation au Basaa. Douala, Cameroon: Collège Libermann, n.d. 3 parts. (vols.)]

Designed to give speech practice. Microwave format. May be covered in approximately 300 classroom hours. In cycles 1-255, grammar is introduced in repetition drills on words, sentences, and dialogues which serve as a base for structured conversation. Grammatical explanations are in structural terms. Culture notes. Pronunciation information and repetition and recognition drills in early lessons. Some cycles contain summaries of the concord system. Cycles 256-265 contain review questions. English and French are used as the language of instruction. The colloquial language is represented with specific materials for workers in the health field. The Basa material is in transcription. Basa-English-French glossary. [PC]

Ngoundo, Lucien. Douala: Une Introduction à la Geographie du Cameroun. Boston, MA: Boston University, 1967. 99 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Microwave format. Each of the 33 cycles contains sections for mimicry and conversation practice. Occasional breaks in the microwave format provide for supplementary drills, reading practice, structured conversation, and tests. No information on pronunciation. Few grammar notes.

Translations and instructions to the student are given in French. The basic theme throughout is the geography of Africa. [PC]

Schürle, Georg. Die Sprache der Basa in Kamerun; Grammatik und Wörterbuch. (Abhandlungen des Hamburgischen Kolonialinstituts, Bd. 8, Reihe B: Völkerkunde, Kulturgeschichte und Sprachen, Bd. 5) Hamburg, W. Germany: L. Friederichsen & Co., 1912. viii, 292 pp.

Pedagogical grammar-textbook designed to give speech practice. Six chapters, each dealing with one of the parts of speech and its functions. Lessons include vocabulary lists, numerous examples and translation exercises. Basaa-German, German-Basaa dictionary. Entries include parts of speech and illustrative sentences.

GRAMMARS

Dugast, Idelette. Grammaire du tùnɛn. (Langues et Littératures de l'Afrique Noire, 8) Paris, France: C. Klincksieck, 1971. 388 pp.

Descriptive and reference grammar. Introduction to the language and its setting. Grammar includes description of phonology, morphology (grammatical forms and derivations), and syntax. Examples follow items described, sometimes in long lists.

Ittmann, Johannes. Grammatik des Duala (Kamerun). (Zeitschrift für Eingeborenensprachen, Supplement XX) Berlin, Germany: D. Reimer, 1939. 250 pp.

A traditional grammar. Parts I and II deal with phonetics and morphology. Part III is on word building, and Part IV is on sentences. Appended are tables of forms (nominal and verbal prefixes; numerals; verbs, etc.) and an index of subjects and words (both German and Duala words listed together).

DICTIONARIES

Dinkelacker, Ernst. Wörterbuch der Duala-Sprache. (Abhandlungen des Hamburgischen Kolonialinstituts, Bd. 16. Reihe B: Völkerkunde, Kulturgeschichte und Sprache, Bd. 10) Hamburg, W. Germany: L. Friederischen and Co., 1914. vi, 215 pp.

Duala-German dictionary. Entries listed by radical with accompanying affixes. Sub-entries listed under head word. Some grammatical information; levels of usage and illustrative sentences. German-Duala dictionary much shorter.

Dugast, Idelette. Lexique de la langue Tunɛn (parler des Banen du Sud-Ouest du Cameroun). (Langues et Littératures de l'Afrique Noire, 2) Paris, France: C. Klincksieck, 1967. xxii, 238 pp.

Tunɛn-French dictionary. Entries include grammatical information and explanations rather than glosses. French-Tunɛn finder list. Brief grammatical outline.

Helmlinger, Paul. Dictionnaire duala-français; Suivi d'un lexique français-duala. (Langues et littératures de l'Afrique Noire, 9) Paris, France: Éditions Klincksieck, 1972. xxi, 664 pp.

Entries are listed by radical with class indicated. Grammatical information, alternate pronunciations, levels of usage, and illustrative phrases and sentences included. Brief introduction to the alphabet and word classes.

Lemb, Pierre. Dictionnaire Basaá-Français. Douala, Cameroon: Collège Libermann, 1973.

FANG-BULU

TEACHING MATERIALS

Alexandre, Pierre. Manuel élémentaire de langue bulu (Sud Cameroun). (Langues et dialectes d'Outremer, no. 5) Paris, France: Centre de hautes études d'administration musulmane, 1956. 229 pp.

Essissima, J.N. Bulu Text. Baker, LA: U.S. Peace Corps Leland Training Center, 1968. 189 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Microwave format. Contains 116 cycles, most including grammar notes and suggestions for conversation practice in addition to the 'M' and 'C' phases. Occasional culture notes and exercises for review. Also included are several 'text series', each containing a few reading passages with exercises for comprehension. No information on pronunciation. [PC]

Essono, Jean-Marie. l'Ewondo par la grammaire et l'exercice, 1ère partie. Yaoundé, Cameroon: l'Université du Cameroun. 74 pp.

Thirty-four short lessons designed to give speech and reading practice. Explanations in structural terms with emphasis on pronunciation and nominal classes. Various exercises of the traditional school variety, e.g. recognition, question-answer, completion, reading, comprehension, etc.

Harding, Deborah A. Introduction to Fang, A Bantoid Language of Gabon. Hanover, NH: Dartmouth College, 1968. v, 92 pp. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Ndongo Esono, Salvador. Gramática Pamue. Madrid, Spain: Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, Instituto de Estudios Africanos, 1956. 112 pp.

Pedagogical grammar textbook, traditional in approach. Designed to give speech and reading practice. Lessons include brief grammatical rules followed by numerous examples to be learned, and translation exercises. A few practical conversations at the end. Portuguese-Pamue vocabulary.

Pichon, François. Petite grammaire ewondo avec exercices appropriés, suivie d'un petit manuel de conversation et d'un lexique. Yaoundé, Cameroon: Mission catholique Yaoundé, 1950. 122 pp.

Traditional explanations on parts of speech. Followed by reading and translation exercises. Two-way vocabulary.

Abega, Prosper. La grammaire de l'ewondo. (Section de Linguistique Appliquée, 7) Yaoundé, Cameroon: Université Fédérale du Cameroun, 1969. 135 pp.

A descriptive grammar which can also be used as a pedagogical tool. Structural in approach. The 29 chapters deal with phonology, morphology and syntax. Numerous examples with translations follow brief descriptions. Further remarks about grammatical rules are provided at the end of paragraphs. Exercises are given at the end of each chapter.

Alexandre, Pierre. Système verbal et prédicatif du Bulu (Cameroun). (Langues et Littératures de l'Afrique noire, 1) Paris, France: Librairie C. Klincksieck, 1966. 219 pp.

Augenot, Jean-Pierre. Aspects de la phonétique et de la morphologie de l'ewondo. Brussels, Belgium, 1971. xxiv, 86 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Galley, Samuel. Dictionnaire fang-français et français-fang, suivi d'une grammaire fang. Neuchâtel, France: H. Messeiller, 1964. 588 pp.

Entries include parts of speech, synonyms, illustrative phrases, and some cultural information. A brief grammatical sketch follows.

Lejeune, L. Dictionnaire français-fang, précédé de quelques principes grammaticaux sur cette même langue. Paris, France: A. Faivre et H. Teillard, 1892. viii, 347 pp.

Parts of speech, synonyms, and illustrative phrases provided. Includes a brief grammatical outline.

Martrou, Louis. Lexique fãñ-français. Paris, France: Procuré générale, 1924. 137 pp.

Entries include parts of speech, synonyms, cross references, and illustrative phrases and proverbs. Brief introduction to the alphabet, accent, and basic grammatical elements.

FE'FE'

GRAMMARS

Hyman, Larry M. A Phonological Study of Fe'fe'-Bamileke. (Studies in African Linguistics, Supplement, 4) Los Angeles, CA: University of California at Los Angeles, 1972. xi, 230 pp.

Ngangoum, F.B. Le Bamiléké des Fe'fe': Grammaire descriptive usuelle. Bafang, Cameroon: Distr. by Nufi, 1970. 182 pp.

GANDA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Ashton, Ethel O. et al. A Luganda Grammar. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1954. ix, 516 pp. Records.

For self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In 35 chapters, grammar is explained in traditional terms, with numerous examples, and illustrated in translation and transformation drills. Three introductory chapters outline the phonology, spelling rules, and grammatical structure. Repetition drills on sounds and tones. A supplement contains the texts, single words and conversations of the records accompanied by translations and annotations. Grammar index.

Kamoga, Frederick K. and Earl W. Stevick. Luganda Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1968. xxxvi, 345 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO] [ED 024 933 MF only]

The Luganda Pretraining Program, a companion volume, should be used in conjunction with the first 20 lessons. Designed to give speech practice. In the 94 lessons, grammar and vocabulary are introduced in repetition, response drills, and narratives which serve as a base for structured conversation. Grammatical explanations are in structural terms. There are pronunciation, completion and translation drills. An introductory chapter contains a synopsis of the tonal system. The standard orthography is used throughout, modified to indicate tone and intonation. Appended are kinship charts and a Luganda-English glossary. [FSI/PC]

Stevick, Earl W. and Frederick K. Kamoga. Luganda: pretraining program. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1970. vii, 246 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO] [ED 055 520]

Intended for students who have had no previous contact with Luganda, and who have not yet begun to study with an instructor. Its purpose is to teach recognition of certain fundamental features of the structure of the language. May be covered in 20 hours. Divided into 16 series of frames. These contain information, illustrative material, pronunciation and grammar recognition drills, and exercises in marking tone. [FSI/PC]

GRAMMARS

Chesswas, J.D. The Essentials of Luganda. 4th ed. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1969. xiv, 203 pp. [1st pub. 1954]

A traditional pedagogical grammar, but can be used for reference purposes. Intended for people studying for the Lower Standard Luganda Examination. Emphasis is on reading comprehension and writing. Translation exercises. Comprehensive table of concords at the end of the book.

Cole, Desmond. Some features of Ganda linguistic structure. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1967. [Reprinted from African Studies 24:1.3-54, 24:2.71-116, 24:3-4.199-240 (1965).]

Treats phonology, noun-classes, tonomorphology of nouns and adjectives, pronouns, qualificatives, and two sections on the verb. Numerous examples. Standard orthography modified to note word division.

Nsimbi, M.B. and J.D. Chesswas. Ebinnyonnyola empandiika y'Oluganda entongole. Nairobi, Kenya: Oxford University Press, 1971. 28 pp.

An explanation of the standard orthography of Ganda. Text in Ganda and English.

Pilkington, George Lawrence. A Hand-Book of Luganda. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1967. 95 pp. [Reprint of 1st ed. with corrections, London, 1902]

A synopsis of Luganda grammar. Traditional in approach. Intended for the person who wants to become acquainted with the language. Grammatical explanations are brief, followed by numerous examples, and/or tables. There is little information on pronunciation.

DICTIONARIES

Kitching, Arthur L. and G.R. Blackledge. A Luganda-English and English-Luganda Dictionary. Rev. ed. London, England: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, 1952. xv, 234 pp. [1st pub. 1904]

Entries include parts of speech, synonyms, illustrative phrases and idioms.

Murphy, John D. et al. Luganda-English Dictionary. (Publications in the languages of Africa, 2) Washington, DC: Catholic University of America Press, in association with Consortium Press, 1973. xiv, 651 pp.

A comprehensive dictionary, intended primarily for English-speaking students of written Luganda. Assumes familiarity with Ashton's A Luganda Grammar. Entries include parts of speech, levels of usage, cross-references, grammatical information and illustrative phrases and sentences. Sources of foreign words are indicated. Bibliography.

Snoxall, R.A., ed. Luganda-English Dictionary, with an Introduction on the Tonal System by A.N. Tucker. Oxford, England: Clarendon Press, 1967. xxxvi, 357 pp. [ED 029 286 Resumé only]

Approximately 8000 entries. Parts of speech indicated. Irregular plurals of nouns are listed. Verbs are listed alphabetically and under the verb stem. The perfect stem of the verb is provided. Illustrative sentences and cross-references.

GUSII

TEACHING MATERIALS

Whiteley, Wilfred H. A practical introduction to Gusii. Nairobi, Kenya: East African Literature Bureau, 1956. 134 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Part I should enable simple conversation; Part II, increase of vocabulary and idiom. Part I deals with noun classes, adjectives, demonstratives and possessives plus five simple tenses. The second part is devoted to verbs. Translation exercises with Key. Gusii-English vocabulary arranged within word categories. English-Gusii vocabulary arranged alphabetically.

GRAMMARS

Whiteley, Wilfred H. The Tense System of Gusii. (East African linguistic studies, No. 4) Kampala, Uganda: East African Institute of Social Research, 1960. 67 pp.

KAMBA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Whiteley, Wilfred H. and M.G. Muli. Practical Introduction to Kamba. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1962. vii, 172 pp.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. Structural in approach but utilizes traditional terminology. Part I deals primarily with the noun classes. Introductory section on phonology and tones. Kamba prefix-series summary. Part II deals with verbal system. Translation exercises. Key to exercises. Kamba vocabulary list, bibliography, and index.

GRAMMARS

Brutzer, E. Handbuch der Kambasprache. N.p., 1905. 100 pp.

Farnsworth, E.M. Kamba Grammar. N.p.: Africa Inland Mission, 1957. 141 pp. [Mimeo.]

Pedagogical grammar-textbook. In the eighty lessons, grammar is explained in traditional terms followed by examples, often in list and paradigm form. Various writing and translation exercises follow. Starting with Lesson 74, the lessons deal with special topics such as greetings, the house, the market place, etc., plus supplementary sentences.

Lindblom, Gerhard. Notes on Kamba Grammar. (Archives d'Études Orientales, Vol. 10) Uppsala, Sweden: Aktiebolag, 1926. 100 pp.

A descriptive grammar, intended as a supplement to Brutzer, Handbuch der Kambasprache. The three sections of the study deal with the phonology, inflection, and style and phraseology. Examples with translations follow items described. For each grammatical category the student is referred to a section in Brutzer's book. Appendices include discussion and listing of Kamba names of persons, places, animals, and salutations. Swedish dialect alphabet as developed by Lundell used throughout. Analysis is based on the Ulu dialect. Bibliography.

DICTIONARIES

A Kikamba-English Dictionary. By the Language Committee of the Africa Inland Mission in Ukamba. 3rd ed. Nairobi, Kenya: Machakos, 1970. 239 pp. [1st ed., 1939]

Entries include parts of speech, grammatical information, synonyms, illustrative phrases and some cultural information.

Mbiti, John S. English-Kamba Vocabulary. (Eagle language study series) Nairobi, Kenya: East African Literature Bureau, 1959. 52 pp.

A glossary. Only the roots of adjectives and verbs are provided.

KIKUYU

TEACHING MATERIALS

Barlow, A. Ruffell. Studies in Kikuyu Grammar and Idiom. Rev. ed. Edinburgh, Scotland: Foreign Mission Committee of the Church of Scotland, 1960. xii, 270 pp.

Intended for the beginner. Traditional in approach. The 20 lessons in part I contain brief descriptions of rules (with examples) governing the grammar, a Kikuyu-English vocabulary and translation exercises. Key provided. Part II is an elaboration of part I. Examples with translations follow items described. Transcription used is that adopted by the United Kikuyu Language Committee. Tables on the chief indicative tenses, and general scheme of the Kikuyu verb included. Appended is information on dialects and supplementary material. Analysis based on Karura dialect.

Gecaga, Bethuel Mareka and W.H. Kirkaldy-Willis. A Short Kikuyu Grammar. London, England: Macmillan, 1955. xi, 156 pp. [1st pub. 1953]

Leakey, Louis S.B. First Lessons in Kikuyu. Nairobi, Kenya: East African Literature Bureau, 1959. 60 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Ten lessons with grammatical explanations and translation exercises.

GRAMMARS

Armstrong, Lilias E. The Phonetic and Tonal Structure of Kikuyu. London, England: International African

Institute, 1967. xviii, 363 pp. [1st pub. 1940]
The first part of this description deals with the sounds and tones of southern Kikuyu. About one-fourth of this section describes the vowel and consonant in Kikuyu. The rest of the section (most of the book) deals with tones as occurring in the conjugation of the classes of verbs, forms of verbs, adjectives and nouns, stress and emphasis. Numerous examples with translations follow items described, often given in list form. Section II is composed mostly of dialogues. Appendix includes a discussion of a suggested orthography for Kikuyu. Glossaries of nouns, proper names and verbs. Paragraphs continuously numbered and cross-referenced. Phonemic transcription used throughout.

DICTIONARIES

Barlow, A. Ruffell, comp. English-Kikuyu dictionary. Ed. by T.G. Benson. Fair Lawn, NJ: Oxford University Press, 1975. vi, 332 pp.
Derived words are listed sometimes under the basic verb and sometimes under the noun or adjective. Homographs are listed separately. Synonyms. Illustrative phrases. Cultural and stylistic information.

Benson, T.G. Kikuyu-English Dictionary. Oxford, England: Clarendon Press, 1964. xlix, 562 pp.
A comprehensive dictionary. The arrangement is alphabetical according to the standard Kikuyu orthography. Nouns, listed according to the stem, are accompanied by singular and plural affixes. Verbs, listed in the imperative and according to the root, are followed by their extensions. Parts of speech and tone classes are indicated. Illustrative sentences and proverbs. A transcription is provided for some items. An introductory section includes tables of noun classes and verb extensions and an outline of the tonal classification.

Gorman, Thomas Patrick. A glossary in English, Kiswahili, Kikuyu and Dholuo. Sydney, Australia: Cassell & Co., 1972. vi, 111 pp.
Intended for speakers of both languages. Items grouped by subject or areas of association. Introduction includes description of orthography and phonetics.

KONGO

TEACHING MATERIALS

Dereau, Léon. Cours de Kikongo. Namur, Belgium: Maison d'Editions Ad. Wesmael-Charlier, 1955. 233 pp.
Pedagogical grammar-textbook, traditional in approach. Lessons include grammatical explanations followed by vocabulary lists and composition and translation exercises. Index.

Severn, Beth. Kikongo Language Manual. Nyack, NY: Christian Missionary Alliance, American Baptist Foreign Mission Society, 1956. 231 pp. [1st pub. Bomo, Congo, 1948]
Primarily intended for missionaries. Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 68 lessons, including nine reviews, grammar is explained in traditional terms and illustrated in unrelated sentences. There are reading, dictation, translation, parsing, and sentence construction drills. From Lesson 39 on, Bible translation and questions on grammatical points involved are part of the exercises of each lesson. Vocabulary list in each lesson. Stress in marked on new words. The orthography used in the Bible is taken as the standard.

Swift, Lloyd B. and E.W.A. Zola. Kituba Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1963. xxv, 495 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO.] [ED 010 480]
May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech and reading practice. Lessons 1-10 consist of a primer; Lessons 11-35 consist of a five subject-oriented group of lessons. The primer introduces major grammatical features and basic vocabulary in dialogues with buildups, and substitution and transformation drills. Grammar explained in structural terms. Lessons 6-9 contain structured conversations outlined in English. Lesson One contains repetition drills on nasal compounds. An introductory chapter outlines the phonology. The five lesson groups may be covered independently of each other as time and need dictate. Each lesson contains a dialogue and a narrative. The Kituba of this manual is the Western dialect, and it is written in the standard orthography. Glossary. [NDEA/FSI]

GRAMMARS

Carter, Hazel. Syntax and tone in Kongo. London, England: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1973. xiv, 340 pp.
For the specialist. Structural analysis of the relation between pitch and syntax in Zombo, a dialect of the Kongo language. Numerous appendices also include grammatical explanations with examples. Bibliography.

Clercq, L. de. Grammaire du Kiyombe. (Bibliothèque-Congo, no. 5) Brussels, Belgium: Goemaere, Imprimeur du roi, 1921. 92 pp.
Brief traditional reference grammar.

Daelman, Jan. Morfologie van naamwoord en werkwoord in het Kongo (Ntandu) met ontleding van het foneemsysteem. Leuven, Belgium, 1966. 404 pp.
Deals with phonemics (syllables, suprasegmental phonemes, tones and tonemes, phonological system) and morphemics (noun stem and tone groups, verb stem-base root, etc.). Index.

Eynde, Karel van den. Éléments de grammaire yaka; phonologie et morphologie flexionnelle. (Publications de l'Université Lovanium) Kinshasa, Zaire, 1968. 114 pp.
Traditional in approach, but utilizing modern linguistic principles. Six appendices on particular nominal forms, compound nominal forms, compound pronominal forms, interrogative forms, etc.

Fehderau, Harold W. Descriptive Grammar of the Kituba Language: A Dialectal Survey. Leopoldville [Kinshasa], Zaire: American Mennonite Brethren Board of Missions, 1962. xiii, 229 pp.
A linguistic grammar, structural in approach. Intended for the specialist and the layman. The major part of the book consists of sentences illustrating the points of grammar described; over half the book consists of some 13,000 example sentences with translations. Sections on pronunciation and orthography, morphology, and some grammatical constructions.

Regional dialects and individual differences noted. Phonemic transcription used throughout. Kituba-English glossary. Index.

Lumwamu, François. Essai de morpho-syntaxe systématique des parlers Kongo. (Langues et littératures de l'Afrique Noire, 10) Paris, France: Klincksieck, 1973. 246 pp.

In three parts: the phrase, structures of the syntagms, and morphological categories. Also includes a general introduction to the language and its history, plus a brief outline of phonology and tones.

Meeussen, A.E. and D. Ndembe. "Principes de tonologie yombe (Kongo occidental)." Journal of African Languages 3:2.135-161 (1964).

Ndolo, Pius. Essai sur la tonalité et la flexion verbale du Gimbala. (Archives d'anthropologie, no. 19) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée royal de l'Afrique centrale, 1972. v, 105 pp.

Tavares, José Lourenco. Grammática da lingua do Congo (kikongo): Dialecto Kisolongo. 2nd ed. Luanda, Angola: Imprensa Nacional da Colónia de Angola, 1934. xi, 160 pp.

A traditional pedagogical grammar for Portuguese speakers. In three parts: morphology (parts of speech), syntax and Kikongo-Portuguese sentences and narratives. Extensive conjugation lists, charts, and examples enable the speakers of English to use the book for reference purposes. Translation exercises.

DICTIONARIES

Avermaert, E. Van and Benôit Mbuyà. Dictionnaire Kituba-Français. (Sciences de l'Homme, Linguistique, Vol. 7) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1954. xvi, 836 pp.

Bentley, William H. Dictionary and Grammar of the Kongo Language, as spoken at San Salvador, the ancient capital of the Old Kongo Empire, West Africa. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1967. xxiv, 719 pp. in 2 vols. [Reprint of 1887-95 London ed.]

Craven, Henry and John Barfield. English-Congo and Congo-English Dictionary. (The Black Heritage Library Collection) Freeport, NY: Books for Libraries Press, 1971. xii, 248 pp. [Reprint of London, 1883 ed.]

Entries include grammatical information. Appendix contains additional entries. Inserted is a "Comparative table of forest and grassland languages" -- compares English to 11 languages.

Dereau, Léon. Lexique kikôngo-français, français-kikôngo. D'après le dictionnaire de K.E. Laman. Namur, Belgium: Wesmael-Charlier, 1957. 116 pp.

To be used with author's Cours de Kikongo. Based on Meinhof's classification of substantives. Entries include parts of speech, grammatical information, synonyms, cross-references and illustrative phrases.

Fehderau, Harold W. Dictionnaire Kikongo (Ya Leta)—anglais—français. Kikongo (Ya Leta)—English—French dictionary. Kinshasa, Zaire: Editions Leco, 1969. xxxix, 323 pp.

The introduction includes a linguistic and ethnologic presentation of Kikongo. Entries include pronunciation information, parts of speech, levels of usage, grammatical information, illustrative sentences, dialectal differences and borrowings. Appended are a list of kinship terminology, a kinship chart, and an alphabetical index. Bibliography.

Gusima, B. Dictionnaire pende-français. (Publications, Serie III, Travaux linguistiques, Vol. 1) Bandundu, Zaire: Centre d'Études ethnologiques Bandundu (CEEBA), 1972. xxiv, 236 pp.

Laman, Karl E. Dictionnaire kikongo-français. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1964. 2 vols. [Reprint of Brussels, 1936 ed.] [Vol. 2 also reprinted 1972 by Academie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer, Brussels.]

A comprehensive two-way dictionary intended for the speaker of French. Entries include abbreviations indicating dialect variation and the parts of speech as well as illustrative phrases. The introduction includes outlines of the orthography, the phonology, the dialects, and lists of examples of the parts of speech with notations of the tones. Map.

Ndolo, Pius and Florence Malasi. Vocabulaire mbala. (Archives d'anthropologie, no. 18) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée royal de l'Afrique centrale, 1972. vii, 121 pp.

Swartenbroeckx, Pierre. Dictionnaire Kikongo et KiTuba-Français. Vocabulaires comparés des langages Kongo traditionnels et véhiculaires. (Publications, Sér. III, Travaux linguistiques, Vol. 2) Bandundu, Zaire: Centre d'Études ethnologiques, Bandundu (CEEBA), 1973. xv, 815 pp.

Entries include grammatical information. Dialect words and usage marked. Classes marked. Map.

KPA

GRAMMARS

Guarisma, Gladys. Études Bafia. Phonologie, classes d'accord et lexique Bafia-Français. (Bibliothèque, No. 15) Paris, France: Société pour l'étude des langues africaines, 1970. 123 pp.

KUANYAMA (OVAMBO)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Tirronen, T.E. Praktiese Ndonga. Ovamboland, Namibia: Finse Sendinggenootskap, 1960. 150 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. Each class listed is followed by numerous illustrative examples which should be learned. There are practical conversations included at the end. Two-way vocabulary.

GRAMMARS

Brincker, P.H. Lehrbuch des Oshikuanjama (Bantu-Sprache in Deutsch-Südwest-Afrika). (Lehrbücher des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin, Bd. 8) Stuttgart and Berlin, Germany: W. Spemann, 1891. ix, 136 pp.

Part I consists of a description of the grammar comparing the structures of three dialects of Kuanyama (Oshikuanjama, Oshindónga, and Otjihérero). Part II consists of a dictionary, also comparing the three dialects. Entries include parts of speech, grammatical information, and illustrative phrases and sentences. The second part of this section categorizes 14 classes

of nouns. Appended is a biblical text in the three dialects without translation.

Tönjes, Hermann. Lehrbuch der Ovambo-Sprache Oshikuanjama. (Lehrbücher des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen, Bd. 24) Berlin, Germany: G. Reimer, 1910. xii, 235 pp.

In five parts: Part I deals with phonetics; Part II, morphology; Part III, syntax; Part IV includes courtesy expressions, idiomatic expressions, and a short text; Part V, German-Oshikuanjama, Oshikuanjama-German vocabularies.

DICTIONARIES

Roex, François William John le. Ovambo-Woordelys. Ovambo-Word List. Durban, South Africa: University of Natal Librairies, 1962. 40 pp.

Tobias, G.W.R. and B.H.C. Turvey. English-Kwanyama Dictionary. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1965. vii, 199 pp. [Reprint of 1954 ed.]

Approximately 7000 entries. Kwanyama verbs are listed in the imperative singular form, with the vowel of the present indicative appended. Illustrative sentences.

Tönjes, Hermann. Wörterbuch der Ovambo-Sprache. (Lehrbücher des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen, Bd. 25) Berlin, Germany: G. Reimer, 1910. x, 271 pp.

KWANGALI

GRAMMARS

Möhlig, Wilhelm J.G. Die Sprache der Dciriku: Phonologie, Prosodologie und Morphologie. Cologne, W. Germany: The Author, 1967. xxxviii, 278 pp. [Ph.D. Diss., Univ. of Köln]

Corpus based on small stories read or told or tape recorded.

(eki) LEGA

GRAMMARS

Meeussen, Achiel E. Éléments de grammaire lega. (Archives d'ethnographie, no. 15) Tervuren, Belgium; Musée royal de l'Afrique centrale, 1971. 37 pp.

LOZI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Jalla, Adolphe. Elementary Grammar of the Lozi Language. Rev. ed. London, England: United Society of Christian Literature, 1937. 108 pp.

GRAMMARS

Colyer, Stanley. Sikololo: Notes on the Grammar with a Vocabulary. London, England: John Bale, 1914. 53 pp.

Fortune, George. "An Outline of Lozi." In Language in Zambia ed. by Sirarpi Ohannessian, Mubunga Kashoke et al. London, England: Oxford University Press, forthcoming. Part 1: Chapter VII.

DICTIONARIES

Jalla, Adolphe. Dictionary of the Lozi Language. Vol. I: Lozi-English. London, England: United Society of Christian Literature, 1937. 393 pp.

LUBA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Beckett, H.W. Hand Book of Kiluba (Luba-Katanga). Mulongon, Zaire: Garenganze Evangelical Mission, 1951. 246 pp.

Traditional textbook designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. Numerous examples follow grammar rules. Translation exercises. Some topical vocabularies and useful phrases at end. Luba-English vocabulary.

Morrison, William M. Grammar and Dictionary of the Buluba-Lulua Language as Spoken in the Upper Kasai and Congo Basin. New York, NY: American Tract Society, 1906. x, 417 pp.

Intended for adult missionaries beginning their study of Buluba-Lulua. Self-instructional and traditional in approach. English/Buluba-Lulua and Buluba-Lulua/English dictionaries comprise more than half of the volume.

Willems, Em. Le tshiluba du Kasayi pour débutants. 3rd ed. Luluabourg, Zaire: Impr. Mission de Schent, 1955. 281 pp. Quelques exercices sur le Tshiluba du Kasayi. 1955. 32 pp.

READERS

Sappers, Leo. Textes luba, contes d'animaux. Choix, traduction et introduction. (Annalen - Reeks in 8° - Wetenschappen von de Mens, No. 41) Tervuren, Belgium: Koninklijk Museum voor Midden-Afrika, 1962. 115 pp.

Fifty-six stories with French translation on facing pages.

GRAMMARS

Coupez, A. Études sur la langue luba. (Annales. Sciences de l'Homme: Linguistique, Vol. 9) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1954. 90 pp.

A description of the verbal system of Luba. In two parts: the verb forms and their structure, and the grammatical role of tones as reflected in the verbal system. The final chapter contains a comparative list of Bantu affixes and Luba affixes.

de Clercq, Auguste. Nouvelle grammaire luba. Brussels, Belgium, 1929.

Foster, C.S. Kikaonde Grammar and Word Lists. Kasempa, Zambia: African Evangelical Fellowship, 1947. 103 pp. [Mimeo.]

Gillis, Adalbertus. Mwendela Kiluba. Gent, Belgium: Henri Dunantlaan, 1973-74. 2 vols. Vol. I: Grammaire pour débutants. Vol. II: Vocabulaire et graphie phonétique (Volume supplémentaire).

Intended as a beginning reference grammar. Deals with pronunciation and orthography, nominal classes, determinatives, parts of speech (several chapters), and syntax. On the whole, traditional in approach. Tables

and list of verbs, French-Luba, Luba-French glossaries. Vol. II is the same glossary but Luba words are accompanied by a phonetic transcription in both sections.

Morrison, William M. Grammar and Dictionary of the Buluba-Lulua Language as Spoken in the Upper Kasai and Congo Basin. New York, NY: American Tract Society, 1906. x, 417 pp.
Descriptive grammar. The dictionary is English-Buluba-Lulua, and Buluba-Lulua-English. Parts of speech and classes indicated. Also references to the grammar. Synonyms, stylistic variations, illustrative phrases.

Mukendi [Kizito, Aubert]. Grammaire objective du ciluba scientifique. Lyon, France: Presence Africaine, 1975.
Intended for the specialist.

Quinot, H. Petit grammaire de la langue kiluba (tshiluba) du Congo Belge (Province du Kasaï). Brussels, Belgium, 1926.

Verbeken, A. Abrégé de grammaire tshiluba. Brussels, Belgium, 1928.

Wright, J.L. "Kaonde: A Brief Description of the Language." In Language in Zambia ed. by Sirarpi Ohannessian, Mubunga Kashoki et al. London, England: Oxford University Press, forthcoming. Part 1: Chapter VI.

DICTIONARIES

Avermael, E. van. Dictionnaire kiluba-français. (Annales. Sér. in 8°. Sciences de l'homme. Linguistique, v. 7) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée du Congo Belge, 1954. 838 pp.

Broughall Woods, R.E. A Short Introductory Dictionary of the Kaonde Language, with English-Kaonde Appendix. London, England: Religious Tract Society, 1924. 234 pp. [O.P.]
In orthography no longer used.

de Clercq, Auguste. Dictionnaire tschiluba-français. Rev. and augm. by Em. Willems. Leopoldville [Kinshasa], Zaire: Impr. de la société missionaire de St. Paul, 1960. 392 pp. [1st pub. 1936-37]
Entries include parts of speech, grammatical information, synonyms, and illustrative phrases. Dutch glosses also provided for key-words.

Wright, J.L. and N. Kamukwamba. Kaonde Notebook, with an Elementary grammar of the Language. Lusaka, Zambia: Zambia Publications Bureau, 1959. 64 pp. [O.P.]
Contains the equivalent of about 1500 English words. Synopsis of grammar.

LUHYA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Appleby, L.L. First Luyia Grammar with Exercises. Rev. ed. Nairobi, Kenya: East African Literature Bureau, 1961. xxvi, 119 pp. [1st pub. 1947]
Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. Traditional in approach. Lessons include explanations, examples and translation exercises. Key. Table of concords.

Williams, Ralph M. An introduction to Oluluyia. Hartford, CT: Trinity College, The Author, 1972. 2 vols. [Ditto., limited ed.] Tape.
For self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 37 lessons, grammar is introduced in dialogues and explained in structural terms. Numerous examples often in list form. There are response, transformation, formation, translation, question-answer, and repetition drills and exercises -- all to be used with the tape. Introductory section on pronunciation. Appended are supplementary vocabulary lists, and key to exercises.

LUNDA

GRAMMARS

White, C.M.N. "An Outline of Lunda Grammar." In Language in Zambia, ed. by Sirarpi Ohannessian, Mubunga Kashoki et al. London, England: Oxford University Press, forthcoming. Part 1: Chapter VIII.

DICTIONARIES

White, C.M.N. A Lunda-English Vocabulary. London, England: University of London Press, 1957. 80 pp.
Entries listed by stem. Homophones are distinguished by indicating the tones. Loan words indicated.

LUYANA

GRAMMARS

Giv'on, Talmy. The Si-Luyana language: a preliminary linguistic description. (Communication, no. 6) Lusaka, Zambia: University of Zambia, Institute for Social Research, 1970. 111 pp.

MAKONDE

READERS

Harries, Lyndon. Mawiha Texts. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, n.d. [Reprinted from Bantu Studies and African Studies 14:4 (1940).]

GRAMMARS

Harries, Lyndon. A Grammar of Mwera. (Bantu Grammatical Archives I) Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1950. 128 pp.
Descriptive grammar, structural in approach. Describes phonology and provides a summary of the grammatical structure. Remainder of the book is given over to the parts of speech and their functions. One chapter on the ideophone.

_____. An Outline of Mawiha Grammar. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, n.d. [Reprinted from Bantu Studies and African Studies 14:3 (1940).]

MAKUA

GRAMMARS

De Castro, F. Manuel. Apontamentos sôbre a lingua emakua, gramática, vocabulário, contos e dialectos de Angoche. Lourenço Marques, Mozambique: Imprensa Nacional, 1933.

Maughan, R.C.F. A Handbook of the Chi-Makua Language. Johannesburg, South Africa: Adlington, 1905.

Woodward, H.W. "An Outline of Makua Grammar." Bantu Studies 2:4.269-325 (1926).

[KI]MBUNDU (NDONGO)

GRAMMARS

Chatelain, H. Grammatica elementar do kimbundu ou lingua de angola. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1964. 196 pp. [Reprint of 1889 ed.]

Maia, Antônio da Silva. Lições de Gramática de Quimbundo. Cucujães, Angola: Editorial Missões, 1964. xv, 201 pp.

Traditional school grammar. In three parts: phonology, morphology, and syntax. kiMbundu-Portuguese, Portuguese-kiMbundu vocabularies.

DICTIONARIES

Maia, Antônio da Silva. Dicionário rudimentar português-kimbundo. 1st ed. Cucujães, Angola: Editorial Missões, The Author, 1964. 146 pp.

Pocket dictionary. Intended for the speaker of kiMbundu.

[u]MBUNDU

TEACHING MATERIALS

Maia, Antônio da Silva. Manual prático de conversação em português e mussele, dialecto do umbundu. Cucujães, Angola: Editorial Missões, 1955. 245 pp.

GRAMMARS

Hambly, Wilfrid D. The Ovimbundu of Angola. (Field Museum of Natural History. Publication 329. Anthropological Series, Vol. XXI, no. 2) Chicago, IL, 1934. pp. 234-261.

Contains a brief grammatical outline of the language.

Valente, José F. Gramática umbundu; a língua do centro de Angola. Lisbon, Portugal: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1964. 430 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Johnson, Amandus. Mbundu-English-Portuguese Dictionary. Philadelphia, PA: The International Printing Co., 1930. 110 pp.

This first volume of the dictionary is prefaced by an outline (traditional approach) of Mbundu grammar and syntax and contains entries through "b". Entries are arranged alphabetically by Mbundu word and include the part of speech, English and Portuguese meanings, and examples of phrases using the word (translated only into English). The Latin alphabet is used with sound values of Portuguese.

Le Guennec, Grégoire and José F. Valente. Dicionário Português-Umbundu. Luanda, Angola: Instituto de Investigação Cientifica de Angola, 1972. xlvii, 690 pp.

Portuguese-Portuguese-Mbundu. Entries include grammatical information, levels of usage, and illustrative phrases. Brief grammatical outline.

MONGO

Hulstaert, G. Grammaire du lomongo. (Série in-8°. Sciences humaines, nos. 39, 57-58) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal de l'Afrique Centrale, and Leiden, Netherlands: E.J. Brill, 1961-66. 3 vols.

Vol. I: phonology. Vol. II: morphology. Vol. III: syntax. Descriptive grammar, following principles developed by the International African Institute in London. Vol. I includes a list of the linguistic terms used in the text, and dialect maps showing the geographical area studies, as well as that occupied by the total community of Mongo speakers.

_____. Praktische grammatica van het lonkundo (lomongo) (Belgisch Kongo). (Kongo-overzee bibliotheek, 1) Antwerp, Belgium: De Sikkel, 1938. viii, 272 pp.

Jacobs, John. Tetela-grammatica (Kasayi, Kongo). (Pub. O.-A. Inst. Gent, Reeks I, Dl. 1) Gent, Belgium: Rijksuniv., 1962-64. 3 vols. [Vol. II republished: Tetela-Grammatica, Kasayi (Republique Zaïre). 2nd ed. Deel II: Morphologie. A: Nomina - Pronomina - Verba. B: Verba-Invariabilia. Gent, Belgium: Wetenschappelijke Uitgeverij en Boekhandel, 1972. 339 pp. in 2 vols.]

Structural description. Vol. I deals with phonology. Vols. II and III with morphology. Numerous examples. Summary in French and English.

Mamet, M. La langue Ntomba telle qu'elle est parlée au Lac Tumba et dans la région avoisinante (Afrique Centrale). (Annales. Travaux Linguistiques, 11) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1955. 377 pp.

Rop, Albert Jozef de. Grammaire du lomongo: phonologie et morphologie. (Studia Universitatis Lovanium, 3) Léopoldville [Kinshasa], Zaire: Faculté de Philosophie et Lettres, Université de Léopoldville, 1958. 116 pp.

_____. Syntaxis van het Lɔmɔngɔ. (Verzameling van het Instituut Afrikanistiek, no. 1) Leuven, Belgium: Universiteit te Leuven, 1956. 142 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Hagendorens, J. Dictionnaire Français-Ɔtɛtɛla. Tshumbe-Ste-Marie, Zaire, 1956.

Hulstaert, G. Dictionnaire français-lomongo (lonkundo). Antwerp, Belgium: De Sikkel, 1952. xxxii, 466 pp.

Introduction includes outline of phonetics, tonology and grammar. Parts of speech, grammatical information, synonyms, and cross-references provided. Loan words indicated.

_____. Dictionnaire lomongo-français. (Annales du Musée Royal du Congo Belge. Sciences de L'Homme: Linguistique, Vol. 16, 1 and 2) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1957. 2 vols.

A comprehensive dictionary primarily intended for the speaker of French. The arrangement is alphabetical, the nouns being listed under their prefixes and the verbs and adjectives under the roots. Noun classes are identified. Entries include etymologies, illustrative phrases and sentences, and the French and Flemish gloss. The north-eastern dialect is used as the standard. Occasional dialectal variants are included.

Ruskin, Edward A. and Lily A. Ruskin. Dictionary of the LoMongo Language. LoMongo-English-French and English-LoMongo Dictionary. London, England: Christian Literature Society, 1928. viii, 651 pp.

Intended for missionaries. It is printed in regular orthography in alphabetical order. The first section of the dictionary gives the LoMongo word followed by its part of speech and meanings in English and French. The second part gives the English word and then its LoMongo equivalent.

chiMPOTO

DICTIONARIES

Rebman, John. Dictionary of the Kiniassa Language. Ed. by L. Krapf. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Press, 1967. viii, 184 pp. [Reprint of St. Chrischona, 1877 ed.]

Concise Kiniassa-English dictionary. Entries include parts of speech, morphological information, and illustrative sentences. Loan words occasionally indicated.

NANDE

DICTIONARIES

Fraas, Pauline A. A Nande-English and English-Nande Dictionary. Washington, DC: Laubach Literacy Fund, 1961. iv, 361 pp.

In the Nande-English section, with approximately 3200 entries, the arrangement is according to the roots or stems. The roots are occasionally followed by a formative and the noun stems by a class prefix. In the English-Nande section, with approximately 3800 entries, extensions of meaning of the English entry appear as subentries. In both sections, the Nande material is in standard orthography with tones indicated by numerals. The source language of loanwords is indicated. Illustrative sentences.

NDUMU

GRAMMARS

Adam, Jérôme. Grammaire composée mbede-ndumu-duma. (Mémoires de l'Institut d'études centrafricaines, no.6) Montpellier, France: Impr. charité, 1954. 173 pp.

Treats the phonology, morphology, and syntax of all three dialects simultaneously. Occasional comparative tables. Texts in four columns.

DICTIONARIES

Biton, Alexandre. Dictionnaire ndumu-mbede-français et français-ndumu-mbede. Petite flore de la région de Franceville (Gabon). Grammaire ndumu-mbede [composée]. Libreville, Gabon: l'Archevêché de Libreville (Gabon), 1969. 656 pp.

Entries listed by stem with their prefix. Parts of speech, class, levels of usage, and illustrative sentences. Biological words so marked. List of the plants found in the Franceville area, and an outline grammar.

NGALA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Boeck, L.B. de. Manuel de Lingála; tenant compte du langage parlé et du langage littéraire. Brussels, Belgium: Éditions de Scheut, 1952. xii, 108 pp.

Traditional textbook designed to give speech and reading practice. Lessons include explanations followed by examples and exercises, most of them recognition types. Eighteen texts follow, some with interlinear literal translations and some with interlinear approximate translations. Ngala material in texts is in two kind of transcription.

Bwantsa-Kafungu, S. J'Apprends le lingala tout seul en trois mois. Kinshasa, Zaire: Centre de Recherches Pédagogiques, 1972. Tapes.

Primarily a book of exercises.

Hondt, E. Le Lingala pour tous. 2nd ed. Brussels, Belgium: Cuypers, 1959. 206 pp.

Lingala Grammar; Lessons and Exercises. N.p., 196-. 80 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes. A revision and enlargement of the old lessons of the Mission Evangélique de l'Ubangi. The 37 lessons typically contain vocabulary, grammar notes, and repetition exercises. Sentences should be memorized. Tones not marked except in section "Everyday Expressions". Also includes supplementary notes, idiomatic expressions and usages. English-Lingala, Lingala-English vocabulary.

Redden, James et al. Lingala Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1970. xiv, 293 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO] [Reprint of 1963 ed.] [ED 010 481]

Designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 24 lessons, grammar and vocabulary are illustrated in dialogues with buildups and in lists of useful phrases. There are substitution, response, and pattern exercises. Grammatical information is in structural terms. The introductory chapter includes an outline of the phonology. Lessons One and Two include information about intonation and vowel harmony. Lingala material is based on the speech of a person living in Kinshasa. It is written in the standard orthography with diacritics to indicate tone. Glossary. [NDEA/FSI]

GRAMMARS

Anciaux, Léon. Le lingala vehiculaire. 4th ed. Antwerp, Belgium: Buschman, 1956. 103 pp.

Brief grammatical outline. List of verbs. French-Lingala glossary.

Bwantsa-Kafungu, S. Esquisse grammaticale de Lingala. Kinshasa, Zaire: Université Louvanium, 1970.

Ellington, John. A handbook of Kinshasa Lingala. N.p., 1974. 94 pp. [Hartford, CT: Trinity College (?) or Kinshasa, Zaire (?)]

Intended as an introductory reference to the language. Structural in approach. Deals with grammatical categories and their functions. Chapters on affirmation and negation, interrogative sentences, and agreement. One chapter on loan words. Translation exercises at end of book. Bibliography. Index.

Everbroeck, R. van. Grammaire et exercices lingála. Antwerp, Belgium: Standaard-Boekhandel, 1958. 200 pp.

A pedagogical grammar in traditional terms. Translation exercises. Two-way glossaries. Includes narratives.

Guthrie, Malcolm. Grammaire et dictionnaire de Lingala, la langue universelle actuellement parlée sur les deux rives de la partie centrale du fleuve Congo; avec un manuel de conversation français-lingala. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg Press, 1966. x, 191 pp. [Reprint of Léopoldville, 1954 ed.]

Jenkins, Robert M. "A Study of the Lingala Language of the Congo." Ph.D. Diss., Duquesne University, 1967.

Manuel de Lingala: Grammaire. (Manuel no. 58) Kinshasa, Zaire: Éditions Service d'Éducation de l'Armée Nationale Congolaise, 1967. 47 pp.

A brief reference grammar in traditional terms. Notes both spoken and literary forms.

DICTIONARIES

Blavier, E. Dictionnaire / Woordenboek. Lingala-Français-Néerlandais. Français-Lingala-Néerlandais. Nederlands-Lingala-Frans. 2nd ed. Léopoldville [Kinshasa], Zaire: Librairie Congolaise, 1958. 542 pp.

In three columns. Single glosses. No tones indicated.

Everbroeck, R. van. Lingala woordenboek. Lingala-Nederlands. Nederlands-Lingala. Brussels, Belgium: Scheut, 1956. 444 pp.

Concise dictionary. Entries include parts of speech, class, some grammatical and etymological information, and levels of usage. Illustrative sentences.

Rechenbach, Charles W. Lingala-English Dictionary. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Defense, 1962-63. 2 vols.

Entries include some grammatical information and illustrative phrases. A brief grammatical sketch is provided. Vol. II is an index of Lingala-English and English-Lingala.

NGOMBE

READERS

Buku e baikoa bolanga na bokwele. Livre de lecture et d'écriture en langue Lingombe. Basankusu, Zaire: Missionnaires de Mill-Hill, and Namur, Belgium: Ad Wemael-Charlier, 1959-60. 2 vols.

GRAMMARS

Ruskin, E.A. and L. Ruskin. Notes on the Grammar of Lingombe. Bongandanga, Zaire, 1937. 215 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Rood, N. Ngombe-Nederlands-Frans Woordenboek. Dictionnaire ngombe-néerlandais-français. (Annales. Sciences de l'Homme. Linguistique Sér. in 8°, v. 21) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1958. xlvii, 414 pp.

Based on liNgenja, a dialect of Muera (Mowea), but other dialects included. Grammatical outline in Dutch and French. Parts of speech, levels of usage, classes, and illustrative phrases and sentences provided. Map.

NGWE

GRAMMARS

Dunstan, Elizabeth. "The nominal group in Ngwe." Ph.D. Diss., University of London, 1966.

chiNSENGA

GRAMMARS

Ranger, A.S.B. Chinsenga Handbook. A Manual of the Nsenga Language, spoken in the Protectorate of Northern Rhodesia. N.p., 1928. 337 pp.

NYANEKA

DICTIONARIES

Silva, Antonio J. da. Dicionário português-nhaneca. Lisbon, Portugal: Instituto de Investigações cientifica de Angola, 1966. 630 pp.

NYANJA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Chichewa intensive course. Lilongwe, Malawi: Likuni Press, 1969. 144 pp.

Price, Thomas. The elements of Nyanja for English-speaking students. Blantyre, Malawi: Synod Bookshop, Church of Central Africa Presbyterian or The Hetherwick Press, 1966. 272 pp. [1st pub. 1941]

Designed to give speech and comprehension practice. Traditional in approach. Part I introduces the basic essentials of Nyanja grammar. Illustrations are all practical sentences and vocabulary. Translation exercises. Part II treats the more complex aspects of grammar and has fewer examples. Appendices on courtesies and relationships (with table). Index of Nyanja constructions also with table.

Sanderson, G. Meredith and W.B. Bithrey. An Introduction to Chi Nyanja. Zomba, Malawi: Government Printer, 1958. 107 pp. [1st pub. 1949]

Stevick, Earl W. and Linda Hollander. Chinyanja Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1973. xxii, 351 pp. Tapes, cassettes. [Available from GPO] [Reprint of 1965 ed.] [ED 012 445]

Designed to give speech practice. In the 63 lessons, short dialogues with buildups serve as a base for structured conversation. Chinyanja material is in transcription with diacritics indicating tone and intonation. There are repetition, response, combination, and completion drills. Grammar is explained in structural terms. Some problem consonants are discussed in an introductory section. Survey of tones and intonation in Lesson 5 and additional information in many of the following units. Glossary. [PC/FSI]

Thomson, T.D. A Practical Approach to Chinyanja. Rev. ed. Zomba, Malawi: Government Printer, 1955. 63 pp. [O.P.]

READERS

Rattray, Robert Sutherland. Some folk-lore stories and songs in Chinyanja with English translation and notes. New York, NY: Negro Universities Press, 1969. xiii, 224 pp. [Reprint of London, 1907 ed.]

GRAMMARS

Atkins, G. "The Parts of Speech in Nyanja." The Nyasaland Journal 3:1.7-58 (1950).

Elementos de gramática cinyanja. Lisbon, Portugal: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1964. 146 pp.
Reference grammar. Treats phonology, morphology, and syntax.

Harding, Deborah A. "The phonology and morphology of Chinyanja." Ph.D. Diss., University of California at Los Angeles, 1966. xi, 124 pp.

Hill, Trevor. "The Phonetics of a Nyanja Speaker with Particular Reference to the Phonological Structure of the Word." M.A. Thesis, University of London, 1948.

Lehmann, Dorothea A. "An Outline of Nyanja." In Language in Zambia, ed. by Sirarpi Ohannessian, Mabunga Kashoki et al. London, England: Oxford University Press, forthcoming. Part 1: Chapter X.

Watkins, Mark Hanna. A Grammar of Chichewa, a Bantu Language of British Central Africa. (Language Dissertation No. 24) Millwood, NY: Kraus Reprint Co., 1971. 158 pp. [Reprint of Baltimore 1937 ed.]
A linguistic grammar intended for the specialist. Structural in approach. In three parts: a brief description of the phonology; morphology, the discussion of which comprises most of the book; and texts. Included in the morphology are descriptions of the nominal, pronominal and verbal systems, the copula, numerals, demonstratives, locatives, etc. Examples with translations follow items described. The two analyzed texts of part III include interlinear literal and approximate translations, and notes. Analysis is based on the speech of one informant from Kasunga. Paragraphs numbered continuously. Phonemic transcription used throughout.

DICTIONARIES

English-Cinyanja Dictionary. Mitsidi, Blantyre, Malawi: Zambesi Industrial Mission, 1964. xv, 381 pp. [1st pub. 1956.] [ED 034 186 Resumé only]
The approximately 7500 entries include reference to parts of speech, noun-class membership, and illustrative phrases. Verbs are listed under their stems. Subentries are arranged according to parts of speech. The introduction includes a brief outline of the grammar.

Dicionário cinyanja-português. Lisbon, Portugal: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1963. xxxi, 291 pp.

Dicionário português-cinyanja. Lisbon, Portugal: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1964. xxiii, 266 pp.

Price, Thomas. A short English-Nyanja vocabulary. Lusaka, Zambia: National Educational Company of Zambia, 1970. 127 pp. [1st pub. 1957]
Pocket format. Single-word glosses.

Scott, David C. A Cyclopaedic Dictionary of the Mang'anja Language Spoken in British Central Africa. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1969. 752 pp. [Reprint of 1892 ed.]
A Mang'anja-English dictionary. Entries listed by root. Levels of usage, illustrative sentences and occasional culture notes provided. English-Mang'anja index and vocabulary.

_____. Dictionary of the Nyanja Language being the Encyclopaedic Dictionary of the Mang'anja Language. Ed. and enl. by A. Hetherwick. London, England: Lutterworth Press, 1957. [Reprint of 1929 ed.]
Intended for English-speaking missionaries. The entries include notes on native customs, beliefs, superstitions, and daily life. Mang'anja entries in the main part of the dictionary are in regular orthography and are alphabetically arranged. The main root meaning of the word is given first followed by other meanings in order of importance and use. Sentences follow for some words to illustrate use and shades of meaning. Sections on phonology and grammar are included as well as an English-Mang'anja index.

NYORO

TEACHING MATERIALS

Betbeder, P. and J. Jones. Handbook of the Haya Language. n.p., 1949.

GRAMMARS

Morris, H.F. and B.E.R. Kirwan. A Runyankore Grammar. Rev. ed. Nairobi, Kenya: East African Literature Bureau, 1972. 359 pp.
Pedagogical grammar-textbook, on the whole traditional in approach. Designed to give speech and reading practice. Twenty-three lessons deal with the parts of speech, their classes and functions. Various grammatical and translation exercises follow lessons. Appended are proverbs, riddles, songs, key to exercises, additional grammatical notes, and table of concords.

Blok, H.P. "Iets over die zogenaamde 'geïntensiveerde' fonemen in het Ganda en Nyoro." Kongo-Overzee 17.193-220 (1951).

Kuijpers, E.M. Grammaire de la langue Haya. Boxtel, Holland, 1922.

Maddox, H.E. An Elementary LuNyoro Grammar and Vocabulary. London, England: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, 1932. 165 pp. [1st pub. 1902]
This self-instructional grammar is intended for use by missionaries. The dialect presented is that of Kabarole, the capital of the kingdom of Toro. It contains sections on the alphabet, and grammar by part of speech. LuNyoro-English and English-LuNyoro glossaries.

DICTIONARIES

Davis, Margaret B. A LuNyoro-LuNyankole-English and English-LuNyoro-LuNyankole Dictionary. London, England: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, 1952. xi, 332 pp. [Repr. of 1938 ed.]
In part I, containing approximately 13,000 entries, nouns are listed under the prefix without the initial vowel, and verbs under their roots. In part II, containing approximately 8000 entries, words peculiar to LuNyoro or LuNyankole are distinguished. Abbreviations indicate the parts of speech. Cross-references.

Taylor, C. A Simplified Runyankore-Rukiga-English and

English-Runyankore-Rukiga Dictionary, in the 1955 revised orthography with tone-markings and full entries under prefixes. Kampala, Uganda: Eagle Press, 1959. xxii, 207 pp.

Intended for the speakers of both languages. Covers the non-technical language. Part I contains approximately 13,000 entries and part II approximately 5000 entries. Abbreviations indicate grammatical categories and the origin of loanwords. Differing forms in Anhole and Kigeri are identified. Included are sections on tone, pronunciation, verb roots, place names, cattle markings and clan names.

RUNDI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Ménard, F. Guide de conversation Kirundi. Maison-Carrée, Algiers, Algeria: Impr. de Missionaires d'Afrique, 1910. 507 pp.

Presupposes some knowledge of the grammar. Part I consists of vocabulary lists and isolated phrases preparing the reader for the dialogues in Part II.

Setukuru, Raymond et al. Kirundi Basic Course. Ed. by Earl W. Stevick. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1965. 526 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO] [ED 010 479]

Designed to give speech practice. The course is based on the analysis contained in A.E. Meeussen's Essai de grammaire rundi. Thirty lessons including one review. In Lessons 1-28, dialogues serve as a base for structured conversation outlined in later lessons. There are substitution and transformation drills. Grammar is explained in structural terms. Brief paragraphs containing cultural information in Lesson 30. An introductory chapter contains a synopsis of verb morphology and phonology. Tonal information in many lessons, and exercises in supplying tones in Lessons 25-28. Glossary. [NDEA/FSI]

Rodegem, F.M. Le rundi de base. 3rd ed. N.p., White Fathers, 1965. 298 pp.

This manual forms an integral part of three other volumes: Grammaire rundi, Essai de Syntaxe, and Exercices. Primarily designed to teach catechism and liturgical forms. The manual contains a large number of everyday conversational material designed to give speech practice. Translation exercises.

READERS

Rodegem, F.M., ed. Anthologie rundi. (Classiques africaines, 12) Paris, France: Armand Colin, 1973. 417 pp.

Texts of poetry and prose as recorded from oral literature. Included are translations, explanatory material, and vocabulary notes. Index.

GRAMMARS

Bagein, R.P. Grammaire kirundi à l'usage des commençants. Usumbra [Bujumbura], Burundi: Press Lairgerie, 1951. 88 pp.

Traditional pedagogical grammar. Deals with substantives, adjectives, pronouns and verbs. Numerous examples. Few exercises.

Meeussen, A.E. Essai de grammaire rundi. (Annales. Sciences de l'Homme: Linguistique, Vol. 24) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1959. 236 pp.

Structural grammar. Deals with phonology, morphology (morphonology, derivation, flexion, inflexion), and syntax (agreement, group, proposition, the phrase). Numerous examples follow items described.

Ménard, F. Grammaire kirundi. 2nd ed. Maison-Carrée, Algiers, Algeria: Impr. de missionnaires d'Afrique, 1934. 515 pp.

Rodegem, F.M. Précis de grammaire rundi. (Bujumbura. Université. Travaux. Série A. Faculté de philosophie et lettres, no. 10) Brussels, Belgium: E. Story-Scientia, Éditions Scientifiques, 1967. 200 pp.

Descriptive structural grammar. Deals primarily with morphology. Examples follow items described; some cross-referencing. Numerous appendices including colors, expressions, superlatives, africanisms, kinship terms, time, seasons, etc.

DICTIONARIES

Bonneau, Henri. Dictionnaire Français-Kirundi, Kirundi-Français. Rev. & augm. ed. Usumbura [Bujumbura], Burundi: Presses Lairgerie, 1950. 315 pp.

An update of Ménard's dictionary. Parts of speech, class, prefix (substantives and plurals), accent and levels of usage indicated.

Cox, Elizabeth E. Dictionary: Kirundi-English, English-Kirundi. Winona Lake, IN: General Missionary Board of the Free Methodist Church, 1969. 2 pts. in 1 vol. [Reprint]

In Kirundi-English section, plural prefixes of nouns and past suffixes of verbs listed. Parts of speech indicated. In English-Kirundi section, levels of usage indicated occasionally.

Ménard, F. Dictionnaire français-kirundi, kirundi-français. Roesselare, Belgium: Meester, 1909. xxvi, 570 pp.

Rodegem, F.M. Dictionnaire rundi-français. (Annales. Série in 8°. Sciences humaines, No. 69) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal de l'Afrique Centrale, 1970. xxvi, 644 pp.

Comprehensive dictionary intended for the speaker of French. Classes indicated. Levels of usage, cultural information, grammatical information, and illustrative phrases and sentences. Homophones listed separately, low tone items preceding high tone words. French-Rundi vocabulary. Indexes include kinship terms and charts, lists of non-variable words, and of fauna and flora. Maps.

RWANDA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Hands, Arthur L. The Elements of Runyarwanda for English-speaking Students. Gitwe, Rwanda, 1952. viii, 338 pp.

Hurel, Eugène. Grammaire kinyarwanda. 6th ed. Kabgayi, Rwanda: White Fathers, 1959. 234 pp.

Traditional pedagogical grammar designed to give speech, reading and writing practice. Treats the parts of speech. Exercises, mostly of the translation variety, follow each lesson. Final chapter on greetings

and polite expressions. Appendix contains useful sentences.

Overdulve, C.M. Apprendre la langue Rwanda. (Janua Linguarum, Series Didactica, vol. 12) The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton & Co., 1975. 382 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. The 98 lessons contain grammatical explanations followed by examples and exercises (grammatical and translation). Introductory section contains expressions, sentences and questions which the student can utilize, with some illustrations. Tables of nominal and verbal classes, and Rwanda-French, French-Rwanda vocabulary.

Van Overschelde, G. Méthode pour apprendre le Kinyarwanda à l'usage des Européens. Kigali, Rwanda: Imp. de Kabgayi, 1967-68. 3 vols.

Pedagogical grammar but may be used for reference purposes. On the whole traditional in approach. Numerous examples, often in paradigm form, follow items described. Exercises mostly of the repetition type. Vocabulary lists.

READERS

Coupez, A. and Th. Kamanzi. Littérature de cour au Rwanda. (Oxford Library of African Literature) Oxford, England: The Clarendon Press, 1970. x, 237 pp.

Songs, historical and battle narratives, pastoral and dynastic poems. Notes. Also contains an introduction to language, country, and society. Graphs, maps, bibliography, and index.

GRAMMARS

Coupez, A. Grammaire rwanda simplifiée. (Méthode rwanda à l'usage des Européens, 2). Usumbura, Burundi: Editions du l'information, 1961. 114 pp.

Kagame, Alexis. Introduction à la conjugation du verbe rwandais. Astrida, Rwanda, 1962. 36 pp.

Kamanzi, Thomas. Rwanda de base. (Méthode rwanda à l'usage des Européens, 3). Usumbura, Burundi. Editions du service de l'information, 1961. 62 pp.

Sibomana, Leonidas. Deskriptive Tonologie des Kinyarwanda. (Hamburger philologische Studien, 36) Hamburg, W. Germany: Helmut Buske Verlag, 1974. xxi, 205 pp.

Detailed structural study.

DICTIONARIES

Hurel, Eugène. Dictionnaire français-runyarwanda et runyarwanda-français. Kabgayi, Rwanda: Vicariat Apostolique, 1926. 482 pp.

Schumacher, Pierre. Dictionnaire Phonétique Français-Runyarwanda, Runyarwanda-Français. Kagbayi, Rwanda: Vicariat Apostolique, White Fathers, 1954.

chiSENA

GRAMMARS

Torrend, J. Gramática do Chisena: A grammar of the language of the Lower Zambezi. Chipanga, Zambia, 1900. 176 pp.

Text in Portuguese, Chisena, and English.

SHAKA (CHAGGA)

GRAMMARS

Raum, J. Versuch einer Grammatik der Dschagga-Sprache. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1964. 399 pp. [Reprint of 1909 ed.]

DICTIONARIES

Müller, Emil. Wörterbuch der Djaga-Sprache (Madjame-Mundart) gesprochen am Kilimandjaro in Ostafrika. (Beihefte zur ZES, 25 Heft.) Hamburg, W. Germany: Eckardt und Messtorff, 1947. 411 pp.

SHAMBALA

GRAMMARS

Kähler-Meyer, Emmi. "Töne und Akzente in der Formenlehre des Chasu (Tanganyika)." Afrika und Überzee 47.89-133 (1963).

Kotz, Ernst. Grammatik des Chasu in Deutsch-Ostafrika (Pare-Gebirge). Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Press, 1964. 88 pp. [Reprint of Berlin, 1909 ed.]

Roehl, Karl. Versuch einer systematischen grammatik der Schambalasprache. (Abhandlungen des Hamburgischen Kolonialinstituts, Bd. 11. Reihe B: Völkerkunde, Kulturgeschichte und Sprachen, Bd. 2) Hamburg, W. Germany: L. Friederichsen & Co., 1911. xvi, 214 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Heinrich, F.L. Schambala-Wörterbuch. (Abhandlung des Hamburg Kolonialinstituts) Hamburg, W. Germany: L. Friedrichsen & Co., 1921. 502 pp. [Reprint in prep.]

SHONA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Fivaz, Derek and Jeanette Ratzlaff, comps. Shona language lessons. New ed. Salisbury, Rhodesia: Word of Life Publications, 1969. 169 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech practice. The 40 lessons contain graded grammatical information which is explained in structural terms and illustrated in examples and drills. Key to exercises and Shona-English vocabulary with class prefix and reference of first occurrence.

Fortune, George. Elements of Shona Grammar; Zezuru Dialect. 2nd ed., Salisbury, Rhodesia: Longmans, 1967. xvii, 286 pp. [1st pub. NY, 1957]

Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 42 lessons, grammar is explained in traditional terms, and illustrated in examples. Lessons contain dialogues or narratives with a common theme around one family. There are completion, formation, transformation, and many translation exercises. Indices include table of verb forms, Shona-English, English-Shona vocabulary, and an index. Bibliography.

Stevick, Earl W., ed. Shona Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Department of State, 1965. xv, 519 pp. Tapes. [Available from GPO]

[ED 012 023]
Designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 49 lessons, dialogues (1-40) or narratives (41-49) serve as a base for structured conversation. Grammar is explained in structural terms. There are substitution, transformation, response, and completion drills. Pronunciation exercises which consist of problematic consonant clusters are included in units 1 and 2. Glossary. [NDEA/FSI]

READERS

Ndinogona; Standard one. (Longmans' standard Shona readers) Cape Town, South Africa: Longmans, Green, 1957. 73 pp.

GRAMMARS

Dale, D. Shona Companion. 2nd rev. ed. Gwelo, Rhodesia: Mambo Press, 1972. vi, 337 pp. [1st ed. 1968]
Intended as a reference guide to the beginning student. About half the book contains brief grammatical rules stated in traditional terms. Treats the parts of speech, clauses, "consecutive" forms (story telling). The other half contains English-Hausa topical vocabularies, inflection tables, and tone conjugations of the verb. Appended is a paradigm of the indicative mood. Glossary of grammatical terms. Grammar index.

Doke, Clement M. A Comparative Study in Shona Phonetics. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1931. 298 pp. Maps.
Intended for the specialist. Part I is a survey of Shona-speaking peoples based on phonetic data, with indications of their geographical distribution. A description of method follows, which is that of articulatory and comparative phonetics. The features specific to Central, Eastern, and Western Shona are described in detail in parts II, III, and IV. Part V is devoted to general phonetic phenomena of Shona. The appendices include phonetic texts, comparative vocabularies, palatographs, and kymograph tracings. The Shona material is in an IPA based transcription.

Fivaz, Derek. Shona Morphophonemics and Morphosyntax. Johannesburg, South Africa: University of Witwatersrand, Dept. of African Languages, 1970. xxiii, 245 pp.
Intended for the specialist. Study based on item and arrangement approach focuses on primarily syntax. Deals with phonemics, tonal grammar, morphophonemics, and morphosyntax. Analysis based on Zezuru dialect.

Fortune, George. An Analytical Grammar of Shona. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1955. 443 pp. [O.P.]

_____. A Guide to Shona Spelling. Salisbury, Rhodesia: Longman Rhodesia, 1972.
Aims at setting forth the system of spelling, punctuation and word-division. Includes recommendations of the Shona Language Committee, history, a description of the letters and letter combinations of the Shona alphabet to the sounds of the different spoken forms. Chapters on word-division, and usage in dialects. Two chapters with exercises and answers.

Marconnès, Francisque A. A Grammar of Central Karanga; the Language of Old Monopotapa as at present Spoken in Central Mashonaland, Southern Rhodesia. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1931. xv, 270 pp.
Intended as a pedagogical and reference grammar. Traditional in approach. Part I is on the phonology. Part II deals with the parts of speech and their functions. Part III treats the syntax. Numerous examples follow items described, intended for learning purposes. Some exercises.

O'Neil, J. A Shona Grammar. Zezuru Dialect. With Notes on the Karanga and Manyika, by A.A. Louw, Jr. and B.H. Barnes. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1948. 216 pp. [1st pub. 1935] [O.P.]

DICTIONARIES

Biehler, Edward. A Shona Dictionary, with an Outline of Shona Grammar. 4th rev. ed. Salisbury, Rhodesia: Jesuit Fathers, and Cape Town, South Africa: Longmans, Green and Co., 1950. xi, 337 pp. [Reprint of 1927 ed.; 1st pub. 1906]
Part I is a grammar based on the Zezuru dialect. Describes the parts of speech. Examples follow items described. Part II is an English-Shona, Shona-English dictionary. The English-Shona section is longer. Entries include parts of speech, some grammatical information and levels of usage with illustrative phrases and sentences. Chart with orthographic changes at beginning of book. Numerous appendices on flora, fauna, kinship, and crafts.

Hannan, M. Standard Shona Dictionary. London, England: Macmillan, 1968. xix, 825 pp. [1st pub. 1959]
A concise dictionary intended for the speakers of both languages. The entries include parts of speech, illustrative sentences, and cross-references. Verb forms are entered as simple stems with suffixal formatives added. Nouns are entered with their prefix. The noun prefixes and classes are given in the Meinhoff numerical classification. The Shona material is in the standard orthography with tone indicated on words which have identical spelling but different tone patterns.

SOTHO, PEDI (NORTHERN SOTHO)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Endemann, T.M.H. Handleiding by die anleer van Transvaal-Sotho (Sepedi). Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1939. 157 pp. Sotho-woordelys. Met die Afrikaanse ekwivalente versamel uit bestaande Sotho-Literatur. 1939. 56 pp.
Traditional pedagogical text. Twenty-five lessons designed to give reading, writing, and some speech practice. The vocabulary is SiPedi-Afrikaans.

Grobbelaar, Jacobus Christiaan and J.J. Schmidt. Senior Sepedi. Johannesburg, South Africa: Voortrekkerpers, 1967. 246 pp.
May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 30 lessons, the parts of speech and their functions are explained in traditional terms, and illustrated in numerous examples. There are completion, transformation, identification, recognition, reading, and translation drills and exercises. Samples of exams at end of book.

Learn to Speak Northern Sotho. (Series of Africa

Languages, No. 5) Stellenbosch, South Africa: Tegnidisc, n.d. 2 vols. Records.

For self-instructional purposes. Designed to acquaint students with the grammar of Standard Northern Sotho. In the 22 lessons, grammar is illustrated in unrelated sentences and explained in traditional terms. No drills. Lesson 1 contains a list of sounds and their English and Afrikaans equivalents. Sotho material is in transcription. Vol. II contains Afrikaans-Sotho, English-Sotho and Sotho-Afrikaans-English glossaries. Bibliography.

Ziervogel, Dirk, D.P. Lombard and P.C. Mokgokong. A Handbook of the Northern Sotho Language. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1969. viii, 155 pp. Workbook. [Also in Afrikaans: Handboek van Noord-Sotho. Pretoria, 1960. Werkboek. 1968. 175 pp. Supplement: Key to the Handboek with reading lessons. 1972. 70 pp.]

Intended as a practical handbook for the beginner and a reference book for the more advanced student. For self-instructional purposes. No phonetics. Sixty-five lessons dealing with the nominal classes and the verbal system. The Workbook contains repetition, transformation, completion, and substitution exercises. Each exercise contains 10 or 11 sentences designed to drill the student on one grammatical point. Translations provided. Appendices include concords, pronouns, and moods and tenses. Index of morphemes, and subject index. Contains five reading selections with translations. (See also Ziervogel, Klein Noord-Sotho woordeboek.)

GRAMMARS

Wyk, E.B. van. "Word Classes in Northern Sotho." Lingua 17.230-61 (1967).

A discussion of the classification of words into word classes, or parts of speech. The author outlines the principles and procedures relating to Northern Sotho. A listing of the word classes and their characteristics is given at the end of the article.

DICTIONARIES

Ziervogel, Dirk and P.C. Mokgokong, comps. Groot noord-sotho woordenboek: noord-sotho woordenboek: noord-sotho afrikaans/engels. Comprehensive northern Sotho dictionary: northern Sotho Afrikaans/English. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1975. 128, 1536 pp.

Comprehensive dictionary. Grammatical outlines in Afrikaans and English with references to the dictionary.

_____, comps. Klein Noord-Sotho woordeboek: N.-Sotho-Afrikaans-English. Afrikaans-N.-Sotho. English-N.-Sotho. 4th ed. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1976. xviii, 272 pp. [Reprint of 1965 ed.]

To accompany Ziervogel et al., Handboek. First part contains Afrikaans and English equivalents of Northern Sotho words and formatives. Second part consists of Afrikaans-Northern Sotho vocabulary. Entries also in phonetic transcription. Nominal classes noted. Tones indicated. Verbs listed in four forms.

SOTHO, (SOUTHERN) SOTHO

TEACHING MATERIALS

Ferreira, Jan Abraham. 'n Leerboek vir Suid-Sotho. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1964. v, 136 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give reading, writing, and some speech practice. In the 32 lessons, grammar is explained in structural terms, and illustrated (occasionally) in numerous examples. There are reading, translation, and recognition exercises. Key to exercises. Index.

Jacottet, E. Practical Method to Learn Sesuto, with Exercises and a Short Vocabulary. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1968. viii, 324 pp. [Reprint of 1914 ed.]

Traditional textbook. Forty-four lessons typically include grammatical explanations, vocabulary lists and translation exercises. Tables on pronouns, adjectives, affirmative and negative conjugation. Sesuto-English vocabulary. Appended to the book is Additions to Practical Method, by H.E. Jankie. Includes lists of doublets, synonyms, borrowings, and proverbial expressions.

Learn to Speak Southern Sotho. (Series of Africa Languages, No. 6) Stellenbosch, South Africa: Tegnidisc, n.d. 2 vols. Records.

Intended for speakers of English and Afrikaans. For self-instructional purposes and designed to give speech and some reading practice. In the 36 lessons, grammar is illustrated in dialogues, unrelated sentences, proverbs, and narratives and explained in traditional terms. There are pronunciation, parsing, translation, completion, and response drills. The Sotho material is in a modified version of the modern standard orthography. Vol. II contains English-Sotho, Afrikaans-Sotho, Sotho-English-Afrikaans glossaries. Bibliography.

Mofokeng, S.M. Textbook of Southern Sotho Grammar. Kapstaad, South Africa, 1957.

Nussbaum, Loren V. and Gershom T. Lijane. An Introduction to Spoken Sesotho. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1968. 2 vols. [ED 048 592 MF only]

Designed to give speech practice. In the 177 cycles, grammar is illustrated in response or substitution drills intended for repetition practice, and then combined into brief dialogues. Grammar is explained in structural terms. Some transformation drills. Review lessons are based on illustrations which are described in brief sentences, followed by comprehension questions. Cultural information. Sesotho material is in standard orthography with minor modifications and with vowel distinctions and tones indicated by diacritics. Appended are written tests which consist of discrimination drills on sounds, contrastive pronunciation drills, and Sotho-English, English-Sotho glossaries. [PC]

Paroz, R.A. Elements of Southern Sotho. 2nd rev. ed. Morija, Lesotho: Morija Sesuto Book Depot, 1959. viii, 283 pp.

The 40 lessons contain grammatical information, vocabulary lists and translation exercises. Sotho-English, English-Sotho vocabularies.

GRAMMARS

Doke, Clement M. and S.M. Mofokeng. Textbook of Southern Sotho Grammar. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1957. xv, 491 pp.

A reference grammar, employing for the most part a traditional approach, but utilizing some modern linguis-

tic methodology. Following a 50-page explanation of the phonology, the major portion of the book is arranged by: noun, pronoun, adjective, etc. Appendices deal with Southern Sotho and Ur-Bantu, and comparative phonetics of the Sotho group. Index.

Guma, S.M. An Outline Structure of Southern Sotho. Pietermaritzburg, South Africa: Shuter and Shooter, 1971. 253 pp.

A reference grammar, structural in approach, but utilizing traditional categories. Includes an introduction to the phonology in articulatory terms. Numerous examples follow items described. Mainly deals with parts of speech and their functions.

Letele, Gladstone L. The Role of Tone in the Southern Sotho Language. Cape Province, South Africa: University of Fort Hare, 1955. 145 pp.

Sharpe, M.R.L. Everyday Sesotho Grammar. Morija, Lesotho: Morija Sesutho Book Depot, 1952. 158 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Christeller, Suzanne. English-Sotho, Sotho-English pocket dictionary. Morija, Lesotho: Morija Sesuto Book Depot, 1961. 143 pp.

Hamel, L. English-Southern Sesotho Dictionary. Mazenod, Lesotho: The Catholic Centre, 1965. 6 vols.

Entries include parts of speech, levels of usage. Each phrase or sentence is listed separately. Typed in double-spaced lines.

Kriel, T.J. The new English-Sesotho dictionary. Rev. ed. Johannesburg, South Africa: Afrikaanse Pers-Boekhandel, 1958. 339 pp.

_____. New SeSotho-English Dictionary. Johannesburg, South Africa: Afrikaanse Pers-Boekhandel, 1950. 452 pp.

In the Sotho-English section, entries include the Sesotho word, part of speech (in English), English meanings, and compounds and phrases. Entries in the English-Sotho section include the English word and part of speech, Sesotho meaning, and English compounds and phrases with their Sesotho equivalents. Synonyms are also given. Words from Afrikaans are indicated in standard orthography.

Mabille, Adolphe and H. Dieterlen. Sesuto-English Dictionary. 7th ed. Morija, Lesotho: Morija Sesuto Book Depot, 1966. viii, 495 pp. [1st pub. 1937]

A concise dictionary. Arrangement is according to the prefixes. Entries include parts of speech, illustrative phrases, and for the nouns, the related verbs.

_____. Southern Sotho-English Dictionary. New ed. Reclassified, rev. and enl. by R.A. Parox. Morija, Lesotho: Morija Sesuto Book Depot, 1961. xx, 598 pp.

Uses the 1959 Republic of South Africa orthography.

SOTHO, TSWANA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Cole, D.T. and Dingaan Mpho Mokaila. A Course in Tswana. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press, 1962. 130 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. The course consists of 86 sections, each introducing a grammatical feature or vocabulary. Sections 3-5 list the phonemes and provide examples. The grammar is presented inductively. The material is to be used for drill purposes and as a base for additional drills and exercises. Tswana material in transcription with diacritics indicating tone. The Tswana of the material is a modified version of the Rolong dialect. Recommended reading and reference list. [NDEA]

Ferreira, Jan Abraham and A.T. Malepe. Tswana-leerboek. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1968. 132 pp.

Hebert, Raymond J. and Paulus M. Mahome. Elementary Spoken Tswana. Prelim. ed. Washington, DC: Institute of Modern Languages, 1966. x, 281 pp.

For use in a 300-hour course. In the 30 lessons, grammar is explained in structural terms and illustrated in dialogues with buildups which serve as a base for structured conversation. Comprehension exercises in Lessons 26-29. Pronunciation information and drills. Every fifth lesson contains review exercises. The Rolong dialect is represented, written in transcription. [PC]

Mistry, Karen S. An Introduction to Spoken Setswana. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1969. 3 vols.

Designed to give speech practice. Microvave format. In the 163 cycles, grammar is illustrated in repetition and response drills and explained in structural terms. Structured conversation. The Setswana material is in the standard orthography, with minor modifications and with tones indicated by diacritics in the Setswana-English and English-Setswana glossaries. Appended are pronunciation drills, reading passages accompanied by translations, topically arranged vocabulary lists, and a bibliography. [PC]

Sandilands, Alexander. Introduction to Tswana. Tiger Kloof, South Africa: London Missionary Society Press, 1953. 432 pp.

GRAMMARS

Cole, Desmond T. An Introduction to Tswana Grammar. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1955. xxxv, 472 pp.

Descriptive and reference grammar. Treats phonology and morphology. Notes on syntax.

Jones, Daniel. The Tones of Sechuana Nouns. (International African Institute. Memorandum, 6) London, England: International Institute of African Languages and Cultures, n.d. 26 pp.

_____ and Solomone Tschekisho Plaatje. A Sechuana Reader. London, England: University of London, 1916. xi, 45 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Brown, John. Secwana Dictionary: English-Secwana and Secwana-English. London, England, 1962. 594 pp.

SUKUMA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Sukuma lessons, Vols. I & II. Musoma, Tanzania: Mary-

knoll Language School, n.d. 2 vols.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 34 lessons, grammar is illustrated in dialogues, and later in narratives, and explained in brief notes. Each lesson contains pattern drills. English material is replaced with Sukuma as much as possible throughout lessons. Appendix on the Sukuma sound system.

GRAMMARS

Richardson, Irvine. The Role of Tone in the Structure of Sukuma. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Languages, 1959. 124 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Dahl, Edmund. Nyamwezi-Wörterbuch. (Abhandlungen des Hamburgischen Köln Instituts, Band 25, Reihe B, Band 15) Hamburg, W. Germany: L. Friederichsen and Co., 1915. xv, 696 pp.

Richardson, I. and W.M. Mann. "A Vocabulary of Sukuma." African Language Studies VII. (Collected Papers in Oriental and African Studies) London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1966. pp. 1-79.

The approximately 3800 entries are arranged according to the stems or radicals of the headwords. The Sukuma material is in the orthography used in Richardson's The Role of Tone in the Structure of Sukuma. The introduction contains a brief guide to tone, word classes, and derivation.

SWAHILI

TEACHING MATERIALS

An Active Introduction to Newspaper Swahili. Experimental Ed. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1966. 69 pp. [ED 012 451]

Designed to give speech and reading practice. Closely coordinated with A Learner's Synopsis of Swahili Structure and assumes some previous knowledge of Swahili structure. Each of the 25 lessons is built around a story from an East African newspaper. There are repetition, sentence-construction, completion and comprehension exercises. Glossary with entries listed by root. [FSI]

Brauner, S. and J.K. Bantu. Lehrbuch des Swahili. 3rd rev. ed. Leipzig, E. Germany: VEB Verlag Enzyklopädie, 1973. 223 pp.

Butoyi, C.I. Comprehensive Books for Junior Secondary Classes (Forms I & II): Kiswahili. Nakuru, Kenya: Klimu Publishers, 1968. 130 pp.

Traditional school text with narratives for reading, vocabulary lists, illustrative pattern sentences, proverbs, samples of correspondence, and grammar exercises.

Campbell, R.H. Modern Swahili usage. New York, NY: Walker, 1965. 88 pp.

Carlston, Douglas G. Beginning Swahili. Asbury Park, NJ: Butu, Inc., 1970. 123 pp.

Intended for American high school students. Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. Each lesson consists of a dialogue or reading lesson, a grammar section, an exercises section, and vocabulary listing. Vocabulary limited to 500 words. Swahili-English, English-Swahili vocabulary. Index.

English-Swahili Grammar. Nyankunde, Bunia, Zaire: Éditions Évangeliques, 1972. 93 pp.

Intended primarily for missionaries in Zaire. Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 38 lessons, grammar is explained in structural notes and illustrated in vocabulary, unrelated sentences, and often lists and paradigms. There are translation, writing, memorization, formation, conjugation, and replacement exercises. Chart of concords. Index.

Haddon, Ernest B. Swahili Lessons. London, England: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1955. xxx, 245 pp.

Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 44 lessons, and two reviews, grammar is explained in traditional terms, illustrated in basic sentences, a dialogue, or narratives, and included in transformation, parsing, sentence construction, and translation drills. Vocabulary is introduced in lists. The introduction contains information about Bantu languages and a brief outline of the phonology of Swahili. Appended are key to exercises, tests, and grammar index.

Hassan, Mohamed M. Tuseme Kiswahili. Berkeley, CA: Simba Publishers, 1973. iii, 267 pp.

Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. Material entirely in Swahili with the exception of a few grammatical notes and vocabulary. In the 35 lessons, grammar is explained in a few traditional notes and illustrated in numerous examples and dialogues. There are question-answer, completion, translation, lexical, and pattern practice drills and exercises. Swahili-English vocabulary.

Hollingsworth, L.W. and Yahya Alawi. Advanced Swahili Exercises. New rev. ed. by R.H. Saidi. London, England: Thomas Nelson and Sons, 1968. v, 106 pp. [1st pub. 1944]

Assumes mastery of Swahili Exercises by Steere and provides practice in translating English sentences and narratives into Swahili. The sentences are lists of idiomatic expressions or sentences arranged according to the grammatical constructions. Appended are a list of proverbs and aphorisms and a key to exercises.

Indakwa, John. Swahili: Conversation and Grammar. Buffalo, NY: Black Academy Press, 1972. ix, 374 pp.

Intended for high school as well as university level students. Designed to give speech and reading practice. Modified microwave format. One hundred lessons. Lessons 94-99 are reading selections. Swahili-English vocabulary.

_____. Swahili; conversation and grammar. 2nd ed. Houston, TX: Gulf Publishing Company, 1975. 508 pp.

Intended for high school as well as university level students. Designed to give speech, reading and writing practice. May be used by the intermediate student. In the 73 lessons, grammar is explained in structural terms, and illustrated in numerous examples. There are formation, completion, translation, question-answer, identification, pattern practice, lexical, and composition drills and exercises. Reading selections and exercises from Lesson 55 on. Swahili-English vocabulary.

Jahadmy, Ali Ahmed. Everyday Conversational Swahili in

Thirty-Six Lessons: Script for Thirty-six Lessons in Tapes. Santa Barbara, CA: Author, 1970. 71 pp. Tapes.

Closely synchronized with the author's Swahili Structure, Drills and Readings. Grammar is briefly explained in structural terms and illustrated in sentences and dialogues. Vocabulary lists.

_____. Swahili Structures, Drills and Readings. Madison, WI: College Printing & Typing Co., 1969. v, 186 pp.

A Learner's Synopsis of Swahili Structure. Experimental ed. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1967. 50 pp. [ED 012 450]

For self-instructional purposes. Designed to help the student read newspapers. Assumes no prior knowledge of Swahili. Provides a grammatical key to Lessons 1-25 of An Active Introduction to Newspaper Swahili. Appendix refers grammatical points covered in the book to the newspaper readings in the accompanying volume. [FSI]

Masomo Ya Kiswahili. 2nd rev. ed. Musoma, Tanzania: Maryknoll Language School, 1968. 171 pp. Tapes.

Designed to give speech practice. In the 30 lessons, grammar is illustrated in sentences and narratives which serve as the base for structured conversation. There are response and translation drills and exercises. Vocabulary is introduced in lists. Appended are a key to the exercises, pronunciation drills and grammatical tables.

Michuki, David N. and William F. Cahill. Masomo ya Kiswahili. A Kiswahili Course. Nairobi, Kenya: Jomo Kenyatta Foundation, Curriculum Development Dept., Kenya Institute of Education, Ministry of Education, 1967-69. 9 vols. [Pupil's Books, 1-4. Teacher's Books, 1-4.] [ED 044 657 Resumé only]

Special course for second language speakers. Designed to give speech, and some reading and writing practice. Students' textbooks in Swahili; instructions to the teachers in English.

Muganda, Bernard K. Speaking Swahili: A Grammar and Reader. Kusema Kiswahili. Washington, DC: Drum & Spear Press, 1970. 76 pp.

Designed to give comprehension and reading practice. Grammar briefly notes the basic elements of the language. Examples follow items described. The short readings are taken from politics, history, economics, etc. Selections are followed by vocabulary and comprehension questions.

Mwalozi, Chilyalya D. Swahili, Books I-III. Prelim. ed. Philadelphia, PA: The Center for Curriculum Development, 1970-71. 3 vols. Teacher's Manual. 1971. 35 pp. Tapes. [Book I, ED 036 790, Book III, ED 057 664 Resumé only]

Three volumes of a projected four-part course. Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. Each book contains 12 lessons. Grammar is presented in dialogues, narratives and texts, and explained in structural notes. There are completion and substitution drills. Illustrations accompany lessons. Swahili-English vocabularies accompany each volume. Book III is a reader with exercises. Appended also is a list of common idioms and expressions.

Natalis, Ernest. La Langue Swahilie, Première Partie: Cours Méthodique. 2nd ed. Liège, Belgium: Édition Fondation de l'Université de Liège pour les recherches scientifiques en Afrique Centrale, 1965. 246 pp. Exercices. 2nd ed. 1965. 87 pp.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. A textbook in three parts: Part I, a grammar, includes 57 lessons, each describing a grammatical class or category and its functions. Part II contains topical vocabularies covering a wide variety of subjects with French glosses. Part III consists of topical conversations with translations. The Exercices volume contains translation exercises to be used concurrently with the lessons. Map.

Perrott, D.V. Teach Yourself Swahili. 2nd ed. New York, NY: David McKay, 1967. vii, 224 pp.

Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 48 lessons, grammar is explained in traditional terms and illustrated in oral and written translation drills of unrelated sentences, narratives, and a letter. Pronunciation is briefly discussed in an introductory section. Appended are supplementary vocabularies, suggested further study, tables of concords, verb tenses, and derivative forms, key to exercises, grammatical index, and Swahili-English, English-Swahili glossaries.

Steere, Edward. Swahili Exercises. Rev. ed. by A.B. Hellier. London, England: Sheldon Press, 1956. xii, 159 pp. [O.P.] Key to Swahili Exercises. 1934. 58 pp. [O.P.]

Stevick, Earl W., J.G. Mlela and F.N. Njenga. Swahili Basic Course. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1968. xxvi, 560 pp. Tapes. Cassettes. [Available from GPO.] [1st pub. 1963.] [ED 010 460]

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech and some reading practice. In the 150 short units, dialogues with buildups serve as a base for conversations sketched briefly in English. Six reading selections followed by vocabulary and questions. Several units contain lists of review sentences. Units 126-150 contain a series of spontaneously recorded conversations. There are substitution, repetition, matching, and response drills. Grammar is explained in structural terms. The introduction includes an outline of the phonology. Swahili-English glossary. [NDEA/FSI]

_____. Marianne Lehr and Paul G. Imhof. Swahili, An Active Introduction. Washington, DC: Foreign Service Institute, Dept. of State, 1969. 2 vols. Tapes, cassettes. [Available from GPO] [Reprint of 1966 ed.] [ED 012 897/898]

The two companion volumes constitute a course and may be used together or independently of each other. Designed to give speech and reading practice. The Geography text contains 38 cycles and eight series of texts, and the other text, 37 cycles, including two reviews and a series of texts. In phase I, grammar and vocabulary is introduced in basic sentences and in short dialogues, included in repetition, substitution, and completion drills, and explained in structural terms. In phase II, structured conversations, based on the grammar and vocabulary of phase I, are outlined in English. Unit 4, General Conversation, contains intonation information and drills. The texts are recorded monologues some of which contain cultural

information. An epilogue suggests procedures for further study. Swahili-English glossary in each volume. [PC/FSI]

Strandskogen, Åse-Berit. Tuseme Kiswahili; an audio-visual method. Oslo, Norway: Fabritius & Sønners Forlag, 1970. 121 pp.

Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 20 lessons, grammar is explained in structural notes and illustrated in dialogues and reading texts. There are question-formation, completion, translation, comprehension and sentence-formation exercises. Includes songs, useful expressions, and two crossword puzzles. Appended are a concord list, list of possessive pronouns, and a Swahili-English vocabulary.

Swahili Basic Course. Monterey, CA: Defense Language Institute, 1963. 6 vols. Tapes. [ED 032 546]

Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. Eighty-four lessons typically consist of introductory outlines of material to be presented, dialogues, drills, and homework assignments. Cartoon guides. [DLI]

Swahili 12 Weeks Course. Monterey, CA: Defense Language Institute, 1963. 6 vols. Tapes. [ED 026 651]

Designed to give speech practice. Fifty-five lessons typically consist of perception and association drills using picture guides, dialogues with cartoon guides, sequenced pattern and recombination drills, and structured conversations. Brief introduction to Swahili. [DLI]

Wilson, P.M. Simplified Swahili. Nairobi, Kenya: East African Literature Bureau, 1970. 561 pp.

For self-instructional purposes. Traditional pedagogical textbook containing 66 lessons. Vocabulary is limited to approximately 1,000 words. Translation exercises. Appendices include: summary of verb tenses, some common wild fauna of East Africa, agricultural crops and produce, summary of grammar for noun classes, simplified glossary of grammatical terms, specimen paper for the Tanzania Lower Standard Swahili Examination, writing letters in Swahili, key to exercises, and Swahili-English, English-Swahili vocabularies.

Zawawi, Sharifa. Kiswahili kwa Kitendo; An Introductory Course. New York, NY: Harper & Row, 1971. xiv, 290 pp. Tapes.

May also be used for self-instruction. For use in colleges, universities or, with a few modifications, in high schools. Contains 40 units with everyday dialogues that illustrate essential grammatical patterns and features. The rules are mainly contained within the actual content of the lessons. There are sentence construction, substitution and translation drills. A quiz is provided after every few lessons and a key to the questions is appended. In the 12 supplementary readings, simple passages of Swahili prose are presented, followed by sets of exercises. Appendices include a summary of Swahili verbs, two ways of expressing concordial agreement, grammatical points discussed under Maelezo, national anthems of Kenya and Tanzania, songs, some Swahili newspapers and journals, and greetings and other useful phrases. Swahili-English glossary.

_____. Say it in Swahili. New York, NY: Dover Publications, 1972. v, 205 pp.

READERS

Blok, H.P. A Swahili Anthology with Notes and Glossaries. (Publications of the African Institute, Leyden, No. 1) Leiden, Netherlands: A.W. Sijthoff's Uitgeversmaatschappij N.V., 1948. xiii, 268 pp.

For self-instructional purposes. Contains Ki-Unguja texts (dialect of Zanzibar). Assumes knowledge of the basic structures of Swahili. Intended to acquaint the student with the intricacies and finer shades of expression in Swahili. Texts from various sources ranging from legends and tales, essays and letters to popular poetry. Vocabulary notes. Glossaries include a list of principal formative derivatives. Swahili-English glossary cross-referenced to texts, a glossary of foreign words (entries in Roman transcription, Arabic script), and a list of words and proper names mentioned in the notes.

Diva, D.E. Swahili Readers. London, England: University of London Press, 1970. 2 vols. [Reprint of 1951 ed.]

Short stories intended for the beginning and intermediate student. Vol. II contains exercises.

Harries, Lyndon, ed. Swahili Poetry. Oxford, England: Clarendon Press, 1962. xi, 326 pp.

A wide selection of Swahili texts illustrating the prosodic forms and the themes of Swahili poetry. The texts are in transliteration. Introductory chapters contain a discussion of the technique of composition and the linguistic medium. Appended are textual notes and an index.

_____, ed. and tr. Swahili Prose Texts. A Selection from the Material collected by Carl Velten from 1893 to 1896. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1965. viii, 298 pp.

Texts on various aspects of Swahili customs, and descriptions of Velten's and companion's travels. Translation section follows. Vocabulary notes.

Loogman, Alfons. Swahili Readings, with Notes, Exercises and Key. (Duquesne Studies, African Series, No. 2) Pittsburgh, PA: Duquesne University Press, 1967. xiii, 279 pp. Tapes.

A collection of excerpts from textbooks, newspapers, and modern literature and poetry. Unusual vocabulary items are translated. Notes on usage appear at the bottom of each page. Accompanying each excerpt is a translation exercise. Appended is a key to the exercises. [NDEA]

Maw, Joan. Kiswahili kusomea certificate, EACE na EASC. London, England: George Allen & Unwin, 1972. xiv, 128 pp.

Intended primarily for Swahili speaking students sitting for exams. Stories in English and Swahili, and translation of some of the Swahili narratives. Vocabulary notes, and comprehension exercises.

Mhina, George A. Maendeleo ya Kiswahili na Mazoezi; Makusanyo ya Maandishi. A Swahili Anthology. New York, NY: Africana Publishing Corp., 1970. iii, 144 pp.

Intended for students of intermediate Swahili. A collection of articles, short articles and poems by well-known East African writers. Each of the 34 selections contains an introduction and questions in Swahili at the end of chapters.

_____. Vifungu Vya Ufahamu. Dar es Salaam, Tanzania: Oxford University Press, 1971. vii, 64 pp.
Short texts with comprehension exercises.

Mlingwa, E. Haki Itatawala Dunia. Dar es Salaam, Tanzania: Longman Tanzania Ltd., 1972. 70 pp.
Stories from Dhuluma and Tumaini. Special words and expressions in bold type. Comprehension drills and exercises.

Mlingwa, F.E. Kua ukayaone ya dunia. Dar es Salaam, Tanzania: Longman Tanzania, 1971. 71 pp.
Short stories with exercises.

Mwamba, Zuberi Iddi. Ndoa ya binti mfalme na hadithi nyingine. (The Wedding of the King's Daughter and Other Stories.) Philadelphia, PA: The Center for Curriculum Development, Inc., 1971. 67 pp.
Includes comprehension exercises.

GRAMMARS

Ashton, E.O. Swahili Grammar (Including Intonation). 2nd ed. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1964. 398 pp. [Reprint of 1947 ed.]
A traditional pedagogical grammar, intended also as a reference grammar for those acquainted with Bantu languages. Chapters 1-37 are primarily a listing of the rules governing Swahili word-formation, meaning, and usage with numerous examples given for each category. Exercises consist of reading and translation. The final chapter contains summaries, and Swahili-English, English-Swahili vocabulary. General index.

Brain, James L. Basic Structure of Swahili. (Occasional Papers, No. 50) Syracuse, NY: Syracuse University, Program of East African Studies, 1969. iv, 151 pp. [1st pub. 1966] [ED 026 644 Resumé only]
A pedagogical grammar, intended also as a teacher's guide and reference manual. Brief descriptions of the parts of speech and grammatical categories and their functions are provided, e.g. adjectives, "all", "amba", class nouns, passive voice, etc. Subjects covered rarely occupy more than two pages. Numerous examples with translations follow items described. Translation exercises (with key) are provided at the end of the book, designed to correlate with each chapter in the book.

Harries, Lyndon. Swahili sentence structure. Prelim. ed. Madison, WI: University of Wisconsin, Dept. of African Languages and Literature, 1968. 315 pp. [ED 035 869]
A descriptive work on Swahili syntax, influenced by Halliday's general concept of the "elements of structure". Intended for intermediate and advanced students already familiar with the grammatical categories and the system of affixes in Swahili. Chapters treat grammatical categories, syntactic units, the predicate, the phrasal predicate, subject-predicate relationships, adjuncts, non-verbal sentences, interrogative sentences and clauses and links. Based on an "open" rather than a "closed" corpus -- standard spoken usage. [NDEA]

Jahadhmy, Ali Ahmed and Bob Hvitfeldt. Swahili Made Easy; a Grammatical Text and Basic Vocabulary in Usage. Madison, WI: College Printing & Typing Co., 1969. v, 142 pp.

Kajiga, G. Initiation à la culture ntu· grammaire Swahili. Goma, Zaire, 1967. 303 pp.

Krapf, Ludwig. Outline of the Elements of the Kisuáheli Language, With Special Reference to the Kinika Dialect. Leipzig, E. Germany: Zentralantiquariat, 1969. 142 pp. [Reprint of Tübingen, 1850 ed.]

Loogman, Alfons. Swahili Grammar and Syntax. (Duquesne Studies, African Series, Vol. 1) Pittsburgh, PA: Duquesne University Press and Leuven, Belgium: Éditions Nauwelaerts, 1965. xxi, 436 pp. [ED 014 707 Resumé only]
A descriptive grammar, intended for the beginner. Based on modern linguistic principles. Part I includes an introduction which contains general information on such subjects as pronunciation, hours, days, currency and measures, followed by eight chapters on the basic Swahili categories, e.g. kiima (a word or word cluster), kitendo (the verb or verb-form). Part II of the book deals with syntax. Numerous examples, with near literal translations, follow brief descriptions of rules. An appendix contains a list of aphorisms. Some cross-references. Index. Bibliography. [NDEA]

Maw, Joan. Sentences in Swahili: a study of their internal relationships. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1969. 142 pp.
Deals with the sentence, clause, and group structure of Swahili sentences. Appendices on rank-shift and linkage, and texts which are analyzed.

_____ and John Kelly. Intonation in Swahili. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1975. 137 pp.
Intended for the specialist. Based on tape recordings. Analyzed texts are appended.

Merlo Pick, Vittorio. Grammatica della Lingua Swahili. 2nd ed. Torino, Italy: Edizioni Missioni Consolata, 1970. 222 pp.
Parts I and II deal with the nominal classes; Part III with the verb, and Part IV with adverbs, prepositions, and conjugations. Appendices include two legends with interlinear translations, key to exercises, practical phrases topically arranged, vocabulary used in grammar, and an analytical index. On the whole structural in approach, but utilizes traditional grammatical terminology.

Polomé, Edgar C. Swahili Language Handbook. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1967. xvii, 232 pp. [ED 012 888]
Intended for the non-specialist. Chapter 1 is devoted to the language situation: geographical distribution, history, linguistic classification. Chapter 2, a structural sketch, discusses phonology, morphology, derivation, inflection, complex structures, syntax and vocabulary. Chapter 3 treats the writing systems, and chapter 4 deals with contrasts with English. The final chapter is a survey of Swahili literature. Some diachronic information provided. The form of Swahili described is the spoken form used by cultivated speakers in Zanzibar and along the Mrima coast. Map. Bibliography. [NDEA]

Steere, Edward. A handbook of the Swahili language. 4th rev. ed. London, England: Sheldon Press, 1955.

xviii, 184 pp. [1st pub. 1870]

DICTIONARIES

Brain, James L. A Social Science Vocabulary of Swahili. Syracuse, NY: Syracuse University, East African Studies Program, 1968. ii, 43 pp.
A Swahili-English glossary. Requires a knowledge of basic Swahili. Emphasis is on vocabulary found in newspapers and political manifestos.

Cahill, William F. Kamusi ya kwanza. Kiswahili-Kiingereza. A first dictionary, Swahili-English. London, England: Nelson, 1972. 80 pp.
Intended for non-Swahili students in East Africa. Approximately 1800 words. Entries are either glossed or defined by paraphrasing. Illustrative phrases and sentences. Verbs listed by root.

Jahadhmy, Ali Ahmed. Swahili-English Dictionary. (Publications in Linguistics) Berkeley, CA: University of California, forthcoming.

Johnson, Frederick. A Standard Swahili-English Dictionary [and] A Standard English-Swahili Dictionary. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1971. 2 vols. [Reprint of 1939 ed.]

Krapf, Ludwig. Dictionary of the Suahili language. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1964. xxxiv, 433 pp. [Reprint of 1882 ed.]
Useful for the advanced student.

Perrott, D.V. The E.U.P. Concise Swahili and English Dictionary: Together with Students' Notes and a Short Grammar. New York, NY: David McKay, 1965. 184 pp.
Intended for the speakers of both languages. The Swahili-English section lists approximately 5000 items and the English-Swahili section approximately 10,000 items. For Swahili, the plural of nouns is indicated and verbs are given with their infinitive prefix.

Rechenbach, Charles W. et al. Swahili-English Dictionary. Washington, DC: Catholic University of America Press, 1968. xi, 641 pp.
A comprehensive dictionary. Derivative verb forms, with certain exceptions, are listed under the base form. Derivative nouns appear in the normal alphabetical order of the prefix, with a cross-reference to the base word. Common synonyms are listed for unusual words. Foreign loanwords are indicated with a mention of the source language. Each noun is followed by an indication of its plural. Some illustrative sentences, and indications of dialectal variations.

Sacleux, Charles. Dictionnaire Swahili-Français, Dictionnaire Français-Swahili. 2nd ed. (Travaux et Mémoires, Nos. 36 and 54) Paris, France: Institut d'Ethnologie de l'Université de Paris, 1949-59. 2 vols. [1st pub. 1939-41]

Snoxall, R.A. Concise English-Swahili Dictionary (Kamusi ya Kiingereza-Kiswahili). Nairobi, Kenya: Oxford University Press, 1972. xii, 325 pp. [Reprint of London, 1958 ed.]
Intended for speakers of Swahili. Approximately 8000 entries and illustrations. The English entry, presented in the standard orthography and in transcription, is followed by abbreviations indicating the part of speech and the level of style, and by the Swahili equivalent word or sentence written in the standard orthography.

TEKE

DICTIONARIES

Hochegger, Hermann. Dictionnaire Buma-Français. (Publications, sér. III, no. 3) Bandundu, Zaire: Centre d'Études Éthnologiques Bandundu (CEEBA), 1972. vi, 236 pp.
Includes a grammatical outline. Map.

TIKAR

GRAMMARS

Hagège, Claude. Esquisse linguistique du tikar (Cameroun). (Bibliothèque de la Société pour l'Étude des Langues Africaines, 3. Bulletin, No. 11) Paris, France: C. Klincksieck, 1969. 64 pp. Map.

chiTONGA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Hopgood, C.R. A practical introduction to Tonga (Northern Rhodesia). London, England, and Cape Town, South Africa: Longmans, Green, 1953. 259 pp.

GRAMMARS

Carter, Hazel. "An Outline Grammar of Tonga." In Language in Zambia ed. by Sirarpi Ohannessian, Mabunga Kashoki et al. London, England: Oxford University Press, forthcoming. Part 1: Chapter XI.

Smith, Edwin W. A Handbook of the Ila Language. Ridgewood, NJ: Gregg Press, 1964. xii, 488 pp. [Reprint of 1907 ed.]
This book is divided into two main parts: a pedagogical grammar and vocabulary. The grammar is intended for the beginner. Traditional in approach. Brief chapter on pronunciation. The rest of the book deals with the parts of speech, except for a short chapter on syntax. Each chapter contains rules followed by numerous examples with translations and exercises (translation, reading and parsing). Roman transcription used throughout. The Ila-English glossary includes parts of speech and illustrative sentences.

DICTIONARIES

Griffin, A.W.M.S. Chitonga Vocabulary of the Zambesi Valley. N.p., 1915. 159 pp.

TSONGA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Ouwehand, Mariette. Everyday Tsonga. Johannesburg, South Africa: Swiss Mission in South Africa, 1965. 119 pp.
Thirty lessons with vocabularies and exercises. The second half of the book contains explanations of more complicated grammatical forms.

Persson, J.A. Outlines of Tswa Grammar, with Practical

Exercises. Cleveland, OH: Transvaal Central Mission Press, 1932. xii, 209 pp.

READERS

Mkhombo, J.F.C. Leswi ma Leswiya. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1968. 36 pp.
Fifteen short essays. No notes or vocabulary.

Mtombeni, B.K.M. Nongoloko wa Matsalwa. Cape Town, South Africa: Via Afrika Limited, 1971. 121 pp.
Collection of Tsonga short stories by a prize winning author.

GRAMMARS

Berthoud, P. Éléments de Grammaire Ronga. Lausanne, Switzerland, 1920. 56 pp.

Junod, Henri A. Elementary Grammar of the Thonga-Shangaan Language. Lausanne, Switzerland, 1907. 98 pp.

_____. Grammaire ronga. Lausanne, Switzerland: Imprimerie Georges Bridel, 1896. 218 pp.

Louw, Jacobus Abraham. The Intonation of the Sentence and Its Constituent Parts in Xhosa and Tsonga. Pretoria, South Africa: University of South Africa, 1968. xiv, 154 pp. Tapes.

Nogueira, Rodrigo de Sá. Temas de linguíca banta: apontamentos de sintaxe ronga. (Estudos de ciência políticas e sociais, 18) Lisbon, Portugal: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar. Centro de Estudos políticos e Sociais, 1959. 185 pp.

Ntsanwisi, H.W.E. Tsonga Idioms (a Descriptive Study). Johannesburg, South Africa: Swiss Mission in South Africa, 1968. xvii, 116 pp.
Includes chapters on the definition and identification, the origin, figures of speech, the syntactical patterns, and the content of Tsonga idioms. Appended are a list of over 1000 idioms, and a bibliography.

Quintão, José Luís. Gramática de Xironga (Landim). Lisbon, Portugal: Agencia Geral das Colónias, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, 1951. 343 pp.
Brief introduction to the Thonga tribes and the relationship of Bantu to other languages. Traditional explanations of phonology, morphology, and syntax. The second half of book is exercises. Includes reading material. Portuguese-Ronga and Ronga-Portuguese vocabularies.

DICTIONARIES

Chatelain, Ch.W. Pocket Dictionary: English-Tsonga, Tsonga-English. 6th ed. Johannesburg, South Africa: Swiss Mission in South Africa, 1974. 180 pp.

Cuenod, R. Tsonga-English Dictionary. Johannesburg, South Africa: Swiss Mission in South Africa, 1967. 286 pp.
Intended for speakers of both languages. Entries contain stems and words. Cross references. Noun classes (according to Meinhof's classification) are indicated.

Dicionário prático português-tshwa. Cleveland, OH: Transvaal Central Mission Press, 1955. 204 pp.

Nogueira, Rodrigo de Sá. Dicionário Ronga-Português. Lisbon, Portugal: Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, 1960. xx, 643 pp.
Entries are listed alphabetically by prefix; singular noun forms, however, are listed separately. Grammatical information, cross references, and illustrative phrases and sentences. Appendix includes a grammatical dictionary.

Persson, J.A. English-Tswa Dictionary. Cleveland, OH: Transvaal Central Mission Press, 1928.

Quintão, José L. Dicionários xironga-português e português-xironga. Lisbon, Portugal: Agência Geral das Colónias, Divisão de Publicações e Biblioteca, 1951. 177 pp.
Entries include parts of speech, with the morphological category indicated.

South Africa, Department of Bantu Education, Tsonga Language Committee. Tsonga: terminologie en spelreëls, No. 2./Tsonga: Terminology and Orthography, No. 2. Pretoria, South Africa: Government Printer, 1962. 153 pp.
Intended primarily for school children. To be used with a teacher. Entries include synonyms. Orthography explained in Chapter 2. Terminology explained in English, Afrikaans, and Tsonga.

TUMBUKA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Cooper, Paul V. and Oliver Rice. Tumbuka Basic Course. Washington, DC: English Language Services, 1965. xviii, 332 pp. Tapes.
May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech practice. Intended for intensive training programs. In the 30 lessons, grammar is illustrated in dialogues with buildups and explained briefly in structural terms. There are pronunciation, substitution, response, and expansion drills. The language represented is that spoken in the Rumpi district of the Northern District of the Malawi. The standard orthography is used. Appendices cover: charts summarizing grammatical features and supplementary vocabulary. Tumbuka-English, English-Tumbuka glossaries. [PC]

GRAMMARS

Clercq, L. de. Grammaire du Kiyombe. (Bibliothèque-Congo, No. 5) Brussels, Belgium: Goemare, distr. by Librairie Falk, 1921. 95 pp.
A traditional grammar. First part deals with phonetics and morphology (parts of speech). Second part deals with syntax. Examples follow items described.

Elmslie, W.A. Introductory Grammar of the Tumbuka Language. 4th ed. Livingstonia Mission Press, 1923. 152 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Turner, W.Y. Tumbuka-Tonga-English and English-Tumbuka-Tonga Dictionary. Blantyre, Malawi: Church of Scotland Mission, 1952. 284 pp.

kinyaTURU

GRAMMARS

Olson, Howard S. The Phonology and Morphology of Rimi. (Hartford Studies in Linguistics, no. 14) Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1964. xvi, 257 pp.

VENDA

GRAMMARS

Westphal, E.O.J. "Venda: Tonal Structure and Intonation." African Studies 21:2.49-69, 21:3 & 4.123-73 (1962).

Ziervogel, D., P.J. Wentzel and T.N. Makuya. A handbook of the Venda language. Pretoria, South Africa: University of South Africa, 1972. 185 pp. [1st pub. 1961]

Pedagogical grammar intended to present the basic elements of Venda. Structural in approach. Grammatical explanations are followed by graded examples. Lessons for review. Appended are the concords, pronouns, and verb forms of Venda. Index of formatives, and an index of objects.

DICTIONARIES

Marole, L.T. and F.J. de Gama. English-Tshivenda Vocabulary. Morija, 1936. 77 pp.

Warmelo, Nicolaas J. van. Teo dza Tshivenda. Venda terminologie. Venda terms coined for use in schools by the Venda Language Committee. (Unie van Suid-Afrika. Departement van Naturellesake. Ethnologiese reeks, no. 39) Pretoria, South Africa: Govt. Printer, 1958. 98 pp.

_____. Tshivenda-English Dictionary. (Ethnological Publications, VI) Pretoria, South Africa: Dept. of Native Affairs, 1937. 345 pp.

[Ki]YAO

TEACHING MATERIALS

Sanderson, George M. A Yao Grammar. New York, NY: Macmillan, 1922. xii, 211 pp.

Pedagogical grammar-textbook. May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech practice. The 15 chapters deal with the parts of speech, followed by translation exercises. Also included are review exercises, and key. Appendices include forms of address, relationship, adverbial nouns, verbal prefixes, and idioms. Short Yao-English, English-Yao vocabularies.

GRAMMARS

Whiteley, W.H. A Study of Yao Sentences. Oxford, England: Clarendon Press, 1966. xxxvi, 291 pp.

A structural description, intended for the specialist. In three parts: Part I, phonology and morphology; Part II is grammatical relationships; Part III treats sentences. English translation of the many examples. Appended are some examples from the Masasi area. Bibliography.

DICTIONARIES

Sanderson, G. Meredith. A Dictionary of the Yao Language. Zomba, Malawi: Government Printer, 1954. 440 pp.

Yao-English, and English-Yao dictionary. Entries contain stems and words. Synonyms. Cross references. Included is an outline of the grammar.

ZULU-XHOSA (NGUNI), FANAGALO

TEACHING MATERIALS

Opperman, J.M., E.F. Ferreira and T.F.H. Senekal, comps. Fanakalo Textbook. N.p., The Authors, 1967. iv, 46 pp.

For self-instructional purposes. Text is semi-programmed. Explanations in Afrikaans and English. Part I is a grammatical outline with examples and exercises. Part II is vocabulary and sentence building. Part III is a reader with various types of texts, and Part IV is Afrikaans-Fanakalo, English-Fanakalo, and Fanakalo-Afrikaans-English vocabularies.

DICTIONARIES

Bold, J.D. Phrase-book grammar and dictionary of Fanagalo; the lingua franca of Southern Africa as spoken in the Republic of South Africa, Rhodesia, Mozambique, Botswana, Swaziland, Malawi, etc. 8th ed. Johannesburg, South Africa: H. Keartland, 1971. 104 pp.

Woordeboek Afrikaans-Fanakalo. Dictionary English-Fanakalo. Comp. by South African Iron and Steel Industrial Corporation, Education and Training. Iscor, Pretoria, South Africa, 1966. 83 pp.

ZULU-XHOSA (NGUNI), NDEBELE

GRAMMARS

Ziervogel, D. A Grammar of Northern Transvaal Ndebele (a Tekela Nguni dialect spoken in the Pietersburg and Potgietersgrus districts of the Transvaal Province of the Union of South Africa). 1st ed. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1959. x, 227 pp.

Structural description of phonology, morphology, and syntax. Texts with notes and translations. Introduction contains a tribal and historical survey of the northern Transvaal Ndebele tribes, Ndebele dialects, and the linguistic affinities of Ndebele. Index of names and place names. Map. Linguistic index. Index.

DICTIONARIES

Pelling, J.N., comp. A Practical Ndebele Dictionary. Salisbury, Rhodesia: Longman, 1971. 154 pp. [Also pub. 1966]

ZULU-XHOSA (NGUNI), SWATI (SWAZI)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Nsibande, Justice, Nathaniel Kunene and Melvin Schnapper. Basic SiSwati Course. Baker, LA: Volunteer Training Specialist, 1968. 114 pp.

Designed to give speech practice. In the 180 lessons, grammar is illustrated in dialogues which serve as a base for structured conversation. There are substitution drills and vocabulary lists in many lessons. [PC]

Nussbaum, Loren V., Sandlane D. Zwane and T.T. Ginindza. Understanding and Speaking SiSwati. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1969. 2 vols. [ED 045 976]

Designed to give comprehension and speaking practice. Microwave approach. The "Understanding siSwati" series of cycles contain listening and response exercises. The "Speaking siSwati" series of lessons are composed of related sentences which the student repeats and then combines in a brief conversation. Appendices include: classroom phrases, weather comments, Swazi family names, Swazi given names, siSwati kinship, locative and time adverbs without -ini, stative verbs, adjective stems, relative stems, pictures, and siSwati-English vocabulary. [PC]

READERS

Ziervogel, D. Swazi Texts with an English Translation, Notes and Glossary of Swazi Terms. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1957. 193 pp.

Contains 18 texts on anthropological themes. Literal translations. Grammatical notes. Appended are ethnological explanations, a Glossary of Swazi terms, a few prosodic indications, and an Index of subjects.

GRAMMARS

Ziervogel, D. A Grammar of Swazi. (Bantu Grammatical Archives, 3) Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1952. xxii, 224 pp.

A descriptive grammar. Introduction to Swazi dialects. In three parts: phonology (including practical orthography); grammar (formatives and parts of speech); and syntax (approached as a series of constructs). Literary translation of the many illustrative examples. Appended are paradigms of moods and tenses, Swazi texts and an index of subjects. Bibliography.

DICTIONARIES

Rycroft, David. Swati-English Dictionary (Swazi). London, England: Frank Cass and Co., forthcoming.

ZULU-XHOSA (NGUNI), XHOSA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Jordan, A.C. A Practical Course in Xhosa. Cape Town, South Africa: Longmans, Green and Co., 1966. 213 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes and designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 28 lessons, grammar is illustrated in sentences, dialogues, and narratives and explained deductively in structural terms. There are completion, translation, response, and transformation drills. Lesson One contains an outline of phonology. The Xhosa material marked for tone. Appended are a survey of sound changes, an index, and a Xhosa-English glossary.

Mncube, F.S.M. Xhosa Manual. Johannesburg, South Africa: Juta and Co., n.d. xiii, 156 pp.

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech practice. In the 26 lessons, Xhosa material is in the standard Xhosa orthography. Grammar is explained in traditional terms and illustrated in two-way translation drills. Lesson Two includes an outline of the phonology, and repetition drills. Xhosa-English glossary.

Oosthuysen, Jacobus C., Jr. Leer self Xhosa. Cape Town, South Africa: Juta, 1967. 153 pp.

Designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 32 lessons, grammar is explained in traditional terms, and illustrated in examples. There are reading and translation exercises. Key to exercises.

Pohl, H.W., S.M. Burns-Lcamashe and D.M. Ntusi. IsiXhosa. Johannesburg, South Africa: Bona Press, 1967. 270 pp.

Riordan, J. et al. Lumko Xhosa Self-Instruction. Grahamstown, South Africa: Rhodes University, Institute of Social and Economic Research, 1969. 380 pp. Tapes.

Primarily for self-instructional purposes. Designed to give speech and reading practice. Grammatical patterns are explained in structural terms and their usage is illustrated in model sentences followed by drills (repetition, response, two-way translation, sentence construction, and transformation). Vocabulary is introduced with illustrations. Dialogues and narratives serve as summary and as a base for structured conversation. In Lessons 1-4, the phonology is outlined with drills (repetition, reading, and recognition). The Xhosa material is presented in the standard orthography with tones indicated. Appended are some changes, a grammatical summary, and a Xhosa-English glossary.

Riordan, J. Xhosa Language Laboratory Course. Lumku, Cape Province, South Africa: Center for Language and Culture Studies, Missiological Institute, 1967. 184 pp. Tapes.

For self-instructional purposes and designed to give speech and reading practice. In the 42 lessons, grammar is explained in structural terms, sometimes deductively. There are pronunciation, repetition, response, translation, transformation, expansion, reading, recognition and sentence construction drills. The correct responses appear on the page following the drills. Illustrations are used as teaching aids. Xhosa-English glossary.

Wahlasela, Benjamin Ezra Nuttall. Some Xhosa Idioms and Expressions. (Working Paper, No. 1) Grahamstown, South Africa: Rhodes University, Dept. of African Languages, 1973. iii, 41 pp.

Designed to supplement a basic introductory course. The expressions are grouped according to grammatical structure, e.g. associative copulatives, adjectives and relatives, verb forms, noun and associative verb, etc. Literal and idiomatic translations provided with examples. Index by Xhosa keyword.

Xhosa Conversational Manual. (Series of African Languages, No. 3) Stellenbosch, South Africa: Tegnidisc, n.d. 2 vols. Records.

For self-instructional purposes and designed to give speech practice. English and Afrikaans are used as the languages of instruction. In the 25 lessons, grammar is illustrated in dialogues and narratives and explained in traditional terms. Vocabulary list in each lesson. A literal and a free translation accompany the Xhosa material, which is written in the new standard orthography. Vol. II, Dictionary, contains two-way glossaries.

GRAMMARS

Louw, Jacobus Abraham. Handboek van Xhosa. Johannesburg, South Africa: Bonapers Beperk, 1963. x, 268 pp.
Traditional pedagogical grammar. Sixty lessons dealing with the parts of speech. Numerous examples follow items described, often in paradigm form. Translation exercises. Grammar index.

_____. The Intonation of the Sentence and its Constituent Parts in Xhosa and Tsonga. Pretoria, South Africa: University of South Africa, 1968. xiv, 154 pp. Tapes.

McLaren, J. A Xhosa Grammar. Rev. by G.H. Welsh. 3rd ed. Capetown, South Africa, 1955. 247 pp. [1st pub. 1936]
A descriptive grammar, traditional in approach. In four parts. Part I, sounds; Part II, words and forms; Part III, syntax. Examples with translations follow items described. In Part IV the Bantu family of languages, and the position of Kaffir and its relationship to other members of the family are discussed. Six Appendixes contain: designation of relationship, heavenly bodies and natural phenomena, names of the principal South African birds, etc.

Wentzel, Petrus Johannes, J.J. Botha, and P.M. Mzileni. Xhosa-Taalboek. 1st ed. Johannesburg, South Africa: Perskor, 1972. viii, 119 pp.
Traditional pedagogical grammar. Lessons include grammatical explanations followed by numerous examples. Translation exercises.

DICTIONARIES

Dictionary; English-Xhosa, Xhosa-English. Cape Town, South Africa: Via Afrika, 1969. iv, 81 pp. [Reprint]

McLaren, J. and W.G. Bennie. A New Concise Xhosa-English Dictionary. Rev. ed. Cape Town, South Africa: Longmans, Green and Co., 1963. xviii, 194 pp. [1st pub. 1915]
Intended for the use of Europeans and Xhosa-speakers who are studying/teaching English. Entries include roots, parts of speech, synonyms, and illustrative phrases. Classes of words are grouped together. Dutch and English words are included, but not indicated. New orthography. Grammatical outline. Appended is a list of place names.

ZULU-XHOSA (NGUNI), ZULU

TEACHING MATERIALS

Fox, I. Juta's First Zulu Manual with Vocabulary. Cape Town, South Africa: Juta and Co., 1950. 116 pp.
For self-instructional purposes. Traditional in approach. Grammar is presented by part of speech; a verb chart is appended. The vocabulary section is alphabetical by verb stems, nouns, and adverbs. Nouns and verbs necessary for forming simple commands are given and relate to the following topics: the house, business, police station, medical treatment, station, and gardening.

Malcolm, D. McK. A new Zulu manual. Rev. by D.N. Bang. 2nd ed. Cape Town, South Africa: Longmans, 1966. iv, 284 pp. [1st pub. as: A Zulu Manual for Beginners. Rev. ed., 1956]
Designed to give speech practice. In the first part of the text, grammar is introduced according to the parts of speech in general statements. The second part of the book describes grammatical points in more detail. Translation exercises. Appended are a key to the exercises, and English-Zulu, Zulu-English vocabularies.

Nyembezi, Cyril L.S. Learn More Zulu. Pietermaritzburg, South Africa: Shuter and Shooter, 1970. 548 pp.
Intended to follow the author's Learn Zulu. Designed to give reading and writing practice.

_____. Learn Zulu. 4th rev. ed. Pietermaritzburg, South Africa: Shuter and Shooter, 1972. 264 pp.
Traditional textbook. Designed to give speech, reading, and writing practice. In the 28 chapters, grammar is explained and followed by translation, phrase and sentence construction exercises. Key. Glossary.

_____. Uhlelo Lwesizulu. Rev. & enl. ed. Pietermaritzburg, South Africa: Shuter and Shooter, 1970. xii, 281 pp. [1st pub. 1956]
Traditional school textbook for Zulu children with paradigms and exercises.

Ziervogel, D. A handbook of the Zulu language. Pretoria, South Africa: J.L. van Schaik, 1967. 224 pp.

Zulu Conversational Manual. (Series of Africa Languages, No. 2) Stellenbosch, South Africa: Tegnidisc, n.d. 2 vols. Records.
For self-instructional purposes and designed to give speech practice. English and Afrikaans are used as the languages of instruction. In the 25 lessons, grammar is illustrated in unrelated sentences, dialogues, and narratives and explained in structural terms. Guide to pronunciation in Lesson One. Vol. II, Dictionary, contains English-Zulu, Zulu-English glossaries.

GRAMMARS

Beuchat, P-D. The Verb in Zulu. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1966. 80 pp.
For use by the specialist. Deals in detail with the morphological structure of the Zulu verbal conjugation, according to modern structural methods, in particular, the problem of vowel-commencing radicals and of relatives derived from verbs. The tonomorphology of the verb is not considered.

Cope, A.T. "The Grammatical Structure of Zulu." African Studies 16:4.210-22 (1957).

_____. "Nomino-verbal constructions in Zulu." African Language Studies 4.69-97 (1963).

_____. "Zulu phonology, tonology and tonal grammar." Ph.D. Diss., University of Natal, Durban, 1966.

Doke, Clement M. The Phonetics of the Zulu Language. (Bantu Studies, Vol. II, July 1926. Special number) Nendeln, Liechtenstein: Kraus Reprint, 1969. xii, 310 pp.
Chapter 1 defines the place of Zulu. Chapters 2-11 are description of the phonetics. Chapters 12-15 describe the relation between phonetics and morphology and syntax. Tonality is described in Chapters 16-20. Chapter 21 contains six Zulu texts, in phonetic transcription, and with literal translations. Chapter 22

deals with orthography, and Chapter 23 proposes a new grammatical description of Zulu. Appended are some short theoretical and descriptive articles by the author on sounds in African languages.

_____. Textbook of Zulu Grammar. Cape Town, South Africa: Longmans for the University of Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, 1973. ii, 341 pp. [1st pub. 1927]

Reference grammar. Traditional in approach. Phonology, morphology, and syntax of the various grammatical categories such as the predicative, the descriptive, etc. Appendices include: calendar, kinship terms, women's terms. Index.

_____. Zulu Syntax and Idiom. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1955. 234 pp.

Intended as a supplementary volume to the author's Textbook of Zulu Grammar. On the whole for the specialist. Describes the six basic parts of syntactical categories in Zulu. References to morphology. Chapter on sentence analysis, and one on parsing. Final chapter analyzes idioms. Appended are a subject index, and Zulu words and stems.

DICTIONARIES

Bryant, A.T. An Abridged English-Zulu Word-book. 11th ed. Marianhill, Marianhill Mission Press, 1971. 432 pp.

Basically a pocket dictionary. Parts of speech and nominal classes indicated.

Colenso, J.W. Zulu-English Dictionary. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1967. xiv, 728 pp. [Reprint of Natal, 1905 ed.]

For use for information on earlier Zulu and idiom. Entries include parts of speech, stems, morphological information, synonyms, and cross references. Some cultural information. Appended are hybrid words and Zulu proverbs.

Dent, George Robinson. Compact Zulu Dictionary: English-Zulu, Zulu-English. Ed. by Cyril L.S. Nyembezi. 2nd ed. Pietermaritzburg, South Africa: Central News Agency, 1962. 147 pp. [1st pub. 1959]

Entries contain stems and synonyms. A short introduction on grammar and spelling of Zulu.

_____ and Cyril L.S. Nyembezi, comps. Scholar's Zulu dictionary; English-Zulu, Zulu-English. Pietermaritzburg, South Africa: Shuter and Shooter, 1969. xi, 519 pp.

Concise dictionary intended for speakers of both languages. Parts of speech, levels of usage, and occasionally illustrative phrases.

Doke, Clement M. and B.W. Vilakazi. Zulu-English Dictionary. 2nd rev. ed. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1964. xxvi, 918 pp. [Reprint of 1953 ed.; 1st pub. 1948]

A comprehensive dictionary. Emphasis is on the colloquial language, but there are also a number of technical, theological, and scientific terms. Entries are arranged alphabetically under the initial of the stem of each word except for nouns of classes 9 or 10 entered under the nasals. Declension and conjugation are indicated. Synonyms are included and cross-referenced to alternative renderings and to words where fuller information is given. Idiomatic sentences and proverbs. All formatives are listed. Zulu material is in a modified form of the standard orthography. Tones are recorded as in The Phonetics of the Zulu Language, where the figures 1 to 9 have been used to indicate the tone heights. References. An introductory chapter contains brief summaries of the sound system, concords, noun classes, and parts of speech.

_____, D. McK. Malcolm and J.M.A. Sikakana. English and Zulu Dictionary. Johannesburg, South Africa: Witwatersrand University Press, 1958. xiv, 342 pp. [Available also in separate volumes]

Intended for speakers of both languages. Part I, English-Zulu, is intended as a companion to the Zulu-English Dictionary by Doke and Vilakazi (1948), while part II, essentially a word list, constitutes an abridgment of that dictionary. Major concentration is on the colloquial language with attention given to words of particular South African importance. Slang and colloquialisms have been included. Entries, with illustrative phrases and sentences, are subdivided according to the part of speech represented. Homophones and homographs are placed as separate entries. Class numbers are given for some nouns. English items are in standard orthography and in transcription. Zulu items are in standard orthography.

Khoisan

HOTTENTOT

GRAMMARS

Beach, Douglas M. The Phonetics of the Hottentot Language. Cambridge, England: W. Heffer & Sons, 1938. xv, 329 pp.

Dempwolff, O. "Einführung in die Sprache der Nama-Hottentotten." Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprache (now Afrika und Überzee) 25.30-66, 89-134, 188-229 (1934-35).

Meinhof, Carl. Lehrbuch der Namasprache. (Lehrbücher des Seminars für orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin. Bd. 23) Berlin, Germany: G. Reimer, 1909. 192 pp.

Planert, W. Handbuch der Nama-Sprache in Deutsch-Südwestafrika. Berlin, Germany: G. Reimer, 1905.

Rust, Friederich. Praktische Namagrammatik auf Grund der Namagrammatiken von H. Vedder und J. Olpp. (University of Cape Town. School of African Studies, Communications, No. 31) Cape Town, South Africa: A.A. Balkema, 1965. xiv, 130 pp.

Vedder, H. Versuch einer Grammatik der Nama-Sprache. Swakopmund, Namibia, 1909. [Mimeo.]

DICTIONARIES

Krönlein, Johann G. Nama Wörterbuch. Rev. & enl. by F. Rust. Pietermaritzburg, South Africa: University of Natal Press, 1969. x, 390 pp. [1st pub. 1889]

Rust, Friederich. Deutsch-Nama Wörterbuch. Windhoek, Namibia: Rheinische Mission in Südvestafrika, 1960. ix, 97 pp.

BUSHMAN

GRAMMARS

Snyman, J.W. An Introduction to the !Xũ (!Kung) Language. (University of Cape Town, School of African Studies, Communications, No. 34) Cape Town, South Africa: Balkema, 1970. xiv, 208 pp.
A descriptive grammar.

DICTIONARIES

Bleek, Dorothea F. A Bushman Dictionary. (American Oriental Series, v. 41) New Haven, CT: American Oriental Society, 1956. 785 pp.

Interior Africa

ACOLI

TEACHING MATERIALS

The Acholi-English Handbook. Juba, Sudan: Verona Fathers, 1939.

Huntingford, G.W.B. Elementary Lessons in Dho-Luo. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1949. 85 pp.

Kamoga, Frederick K. Lwo Instruction. N.p., Uganda: U.S. Peace Corps, 1971.
Designed to give speech practice. Graduated exercises, dialogues, drills, vocabulary, and grammatical notes. Examples of free conversation. Vocabulary. List of verbs. Illustrations. [PC]

Malo, Shadrak. Dholuo without Tears (Dholuo maonge luya). Kisumu, Kenya, 1952. 27 pp.
For self-instruction. Fifteen lessons with grammatical explanations in traditional terms and translation exercises.

GRAMMARS

Crazzolara, J.P. A Study of the Acooli Language: Grammar and Vocabulary. Rev. ed. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1955. 433 pp.
A descriptive grammar, intended for reference and pedagogical purposes. On the whole, traditional in approach, but utilizing modern linguistic principles. There is an introduction to the Acoli groups and Luo languages. The rest of the grammar covers the sounds and intonation of Acoli, etymological morphology, and the parts of speech. Numerous examples, with translations, follow items described. Paragraphs consecutively numbered and cross-referenced. The second half of the book is an Acoli-English vocabulary. Analysis is based on the dialect of the central group Patíko-Alaero-Payíira. The orthography used is that recommended by the Rejaf Language Conference (1928).

Grannis, Oliver C. "Relative Construction in Acholi." Ph.D. Diss., University of Michigan, 1970. 128 pp.

Gregersen, Edgar. "Luo, a Grammar." Ph.D. Diss., Yale University, 1961.

Malandra, Alfred. A New Acholi Grammar. Rev. ed. Kampala, Uganda: Eagle Press, 1955. xi, 159 pp.
A pedagogical grammar, intended for the secondary school student, and for expatriates. In two parts: grammar (noun, pronoun, verb, adverb, etc.) and syntax (subject, predicate, mood and tense, etc.). Traditional in approach. Numerous examples, with translations, follow brief descriptions of rules. Some cross-referencing of items. The appendix contains an outline of the grammar. Spelling and pronunciation information in introduction.

Santandrea, Stefano. Grammatichetta giur. Rome, Italy: Italica Fens, 1946. xiv, 142 pp.
Concise traditional grammar. First part deals with phonetics and parts of speech. The second part deals with syntax. Also included in this part are folklore texts, with interlinear literal translation, and a short glossary.

Savage, G.A.R. The Essentials of Lwo (Acoli). Nairobi, Kenya: East African Literature Bureau, 1956. 99 pp.

Stafford, R.L. An Elementary Luo Grammar with Vocabularies. Fair Lawn, NJ: Oxford University Press, 1967. xiv, 199 pp.
A pedagogical grammar, traditional in approach. Approximately half the book is an explanation of the grammar. The parts of speech are briefly described, followed by examples (with translations) usually in list and paradigm form. Short Luo-English vocabularies are appended to the first four lessons. Translation exercises follow each lesson. The second part of the book is Luo-English, English-Luo vocabularies. Appendix on tone. Index.

DICTIONARIES

Gorman, Thomas P., comp. and ed. A glossary in English, Kiswahili, Kikuyu and Dholuo. London, England, and Nairobi, Kenya: Cassell and Co., 1972. vi, 111 pp.

Malandra, Alfred. English-Lwoo Dictionary. (Museum Combonianum, No. 9) Verona, Nigrizia, 1957. 333 pp.
Intended for speakers of Luo and English. Approximately 5100 entries. Luo glosses are in the standard orthography modified to indicate "close" and "open" vowels, final long vowels, and tones in verb conjugation. Parts of speech, and some illustrative sentences. The introduction contains summaries of phonology and grammar.

Savage, G.A.R. A Short Acholi-English and English-Acholi Vocabulary. Nairobi, Kenya: Eagle Press, 1955. 50 pp.

Ukoko, Joseph, Jan Knappert and Marcel van Spaandonck. Proeve van dho alurwoordenboek: dho-frans-nelderlands-engels. (Noerdost Congo.) Gent, Belgium: Rijksuniversitet te Gent, 1964. 436 pp. [Also in French translation]
Entries include parts of speech, morphological information, and illustrative phrases and sentences.

Some cultural information. Alur entries in phonetic transcription, with tones indicated. Bibliography.

BAGIRMI

GRAMMARS

Stevenson, R.C. Bagirmi grammar. (Linguistic monograph series, no. 3) Khartoum, Sudan: University of Khartoum, Faculty of Arts, Sudan Research Unit, 1969. 205 pp.
For the specialist. On the whole structural in approach. The first part deals with phonetics; the second part with grammar (parts of speech, adjectival constructions, reduplication, co-ordinate and subordinate sentences, etc.). Includes eight illustrative texts with interlinear approximate translations. Bibliography.

BANDA

GRAMMARS

Cloarec-Heiss, France. Essai de phonologie du parler Banda-Linda de Ippy. (Bulletin de la SELAF, 3) Paris, France: Société d'Études Linguistiques et Anthropologiques de France, 1967. 55 pp.
For the specialist.

_____. I. Banda-Linda de Ippy: phonologie, dérivation et composition. II. Les modalités personelles dans quelques langues oubanguinnes. (Bibliothèque de la SELAF, 14) Paris, France: Société d'Études Linguistiques et Anthropologiques de France, 1967. 71 pp.

Tisserant, Charles. Essai sur la grammaire Banda. (Travaux et Mémoires, 13) Paris, France: Université de Paris, Institut d'éthnologie, 1930. 187 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Cotel, Pierre. Dictionnaire français-banda et banda-français précédé d'un essai de grammaire banda. Brazzaville, Congo: Mission Catholique, 1907.

Tisserant, Charles. Dictionnaire Banda-Français. (Travaux et Mémoires, No. 14) Paris, France: Université de Paris, Institut d'éthnologie, 1931. 616 pp.

BARI

GRAMMARS

Spagnolo, Lorenzo M. Bari Grammar. Verona, Italy: Missioni Africane, 1933. xxvii, 452 pp.
About half the book is a pedagogical grammar, including descriptions and exercises. Part II is on morphology. Part III describes syntax. Part IV is on folklore (religious and magic, social institutions, etc.) Part V is on nomenclature, and Part VI contains Bari-English-Italian, and English-Bari vocabularies. Bibliography.

DICTIONARIES

Muratori, C., ed. English-Bari-Lotuxo-Acoli Vocabulary. Okaru, Catholic Mission Press, 1948. vii, 270 pp.
Entries include parts of speech. IPA-based orthography. Few cross references. Appended are notes on Bari, Lotuxo, and Acoli grammar.

BERTI

GRAMMARS

Petráček, K. "Phonetik, Phonologie und Morphologie der Berti-(Siga-) Sprache in Dār Fūr (Sūdān)." Archiv Orientálni (Prague) 33.341-66 (1965).

BONGO

GRAMMARS

Santandrea, Stefano. A concise grammar outline of the Bongo language (Sudan, Bahr el Ghazal Province). (Museum Combonianum, No. 14) Rome, Italy: Printed by the Sodality of St. Peter Claver, 1963. 157 pp.
General introduction to Bongo. Part I deals with phonetics and grammar. The last chapter includes greetings and terms of relationship. Part II consists of Bongo texts, with interlinear approximate translations. Part III is a small vocabulary. Part IV contains short notes on grammar, and Part V is a comparative vocabulary based on the parts of speech. Bibliography.

DAGARA

GRAMMAR

Prost, André and L. Girault. Abrégé de langue degara; grammaire et dictionnaire. Bobo-Dioulasso, Haute Volta, 1958.

DANGALEAT

GRAMMARS

Fedry, Jacques. Phonologie du Dangaleat (Tchad). Lyon, France: Afrique et Langage, 1971. 154 pp.
For the specialist. Structural in approach. Appended are chapter on intonation, and phonological problems concerning borrowing. Also a text with free translation. Bibliography.

DINKA

GRAMMARS

Nebel, A. Dinka Grammar (Rek-malual Dialect). (Museum Combonianum, No. 2) Verona, Italy: Missioni Africane, 1948. xiv, 175 pp.
A pedagogical grammar intended for the beginner. Traditional in approach. In two parts: Part I summarizes the essential features of the language. Part II provides more detailed explanations for the student who wants to continue with the study of the language. The parts of speech and their functions are explained in brief form, followed by examples, with translations. Each chapter includes translation exercises and sometimes vocabulary lists. Part II includes a series of dialogues and stories with translations. The alphabet adopted by the Rejaf Language Conference (1928) is used throughout. English-Dinka glossary.

DICTIONARIES

Nebel, A. Dinka Dictionary. Verona, Italy: Missioni Africane, 1936. xli, 176 pp.

English-Dinka, Dinka-English pocket dictionary. Introduction contains an outline of the structure of Dinka.

Trudinger, R. English-Dinka Dictionary. Sudan: Sudan United Mission, 1942-44. 2 vols.

FUR

GRAMMARS

Beaton, Alfred C. A grammar of the Fur language. (Linguistic Monograph Series, 1) Khartoum, Sudan: University of Khartoum, Faculty of Arts, Sudan Research Unit, 1968. 180 pp.

GBEYA

GRAMMARS

Englund, Pearl K. "Ngbaka: Phonology and verb morphology." Ann Arbor, MI: University Micro[illegible], 1963.

Monino, Yves and Paulette Roulon. Phonologie du Gbaya Kara 'Bodoe de Ndongue Bongowen (Région de Bouar, République Centrafricaine). (SELAF, 31) Paris, France: Société d'Études Linguistiques et Anthropologiques de France, and Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, 1972. 126 pp.

Structural study, intended for the specialist. Discussion of consonant and vowel combinations, an examination of the frequency of phonemes and tones, a phonological description of the sentence, and a final chapter on ethnophonology.

Noss, Philip A. "The Gbaya Predicate." Ph.D. Diss., University of Wisconsin, 1969. 228 pp.

Intended for the specialist. Included is a background history of Gbeya, and the Yaywe dialect upon which this study is based. Part I is an outline of the phonology, word classes, and syntax. Part II is given over to the Gbeya predicate which the author defines as one of the two minimal obligatory elements of structure in the composition of the clause. This section composes about two-thirds of the book. Examples follow items described. Phonemic transcription used throughout. Bibliography.

Samarin, William J. The Gbeya Language: Grammar, Texts and Vocabularies. (Publications in Linguistics, 44) Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 1966. vii, 246 pp.

For self-instructional purposes and intended to give speech practice. This manual contains a detailed outline of phonology, a reference grammar in structural terms, one annotated and 12 unannotated texts accompanied by translations. Gbeya material is in transcription. The language represented is that spoken in and around Bossangoa. Also included are a bibliography, grammar index, and Gbeya-English, English-Gbeya glossaries.

Thomas, Jacqueline M.C. Le parler ngbaka de Bokanga: Phonologie, Morphologie, Syntaxe. (Le Monde d'Outre Mer, Passé et Présent. 1ère Série. Études, 22) The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton & Co., 1963. 307 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Maes, Védaste. Dictionnaire ngbaka-français-neerlandais; précédé d'un aperçu grammatical. (Annales. Série in 8o. Sciences de l'homme. Linguistique, Vol. 25) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1959. 199 pp.

Entries include parts of speech, levels of usage, and illustrative phrases.

_____. Vocabulaire français-ngbaka. (Annales. Série in 8o. Sciences Humaines, No. 62) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal de l'Afrique Centrale, 1968. 90 pp.

Concise dictionary.

GULA

GRAMMAR

Pairault, C. Documents du parler d'Iro; Kùlàál du Tchad. (Langues et littératures de l'Afrique noire, no. 5) Paris, France: C. Klincksieck, 1969. 285 pp.

For the specialist. Phonological description, texts with literal interlinear translations and glossary (approximately 500 words). Bibliography.

KARA

GRAMMARS

Santandrea, Stefano. Brief Grammar Outlines of the Yulu and Kara Languages with a Comparative Vocabulary of Bongo, Baka, Yulu, Kara. (Museum Combonianum, No. 25) Rome, Italy: Printed by the Sodality of St. Peter Claver, 1970. 239 pp.

Descriptive grammar, on the whole traditional in approach. Each language has description of the phonetics, and a grammatical outline with texts. Comparative vocabulary of the parts of speech (e.g. verbs in English, Bongo, Baka, Yulu, and Kara).

KENGA

GRAMMARS

Vandame, Charles. Grammaire Kenga; exercices, enregistrées. (Études linguistiques, No. 2) Lyon, France: Afrique et langage, 1968. xix, 68 pp. Tapes.

KOTOKO

GRAMMARS

Sölken, Heinz. Seetzens Affadeh. Ein Beitrag für Kotoks-Sprachdokumentation. Berlin, Germany: Akademie Verlag, 1967. 358 pp.

Descriptive grammar. Part I is an introduction to Kotoko. Part II deals with phonetics, grammar, and lexicon. Part III contains an Affadéh-German and German-Affadéh glossary, and an analysis of the author's lexical samples of Kotoko.

LOTUXO

GRAMMARS

Muratori, C. Grammatica Lotuxo. Verona, Italy: Missioni Africane, 1928. xxx, 496 pp.

LUGBARA

TEACHING MATERIALS

Barr, L.I. A Course in Lugbara. Nairobi, Kenya: East African Literature Bureau, 1965. 146 pp. [O.P.]

GRAMMARS

Crazzolara, J.P. A Study of the Logbara (Ma'di) Language: Grammar and Vocabulary. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1960. xi, 373 pp.

A reference grammar based on modern linguistic principles but utilizing traditional terminology. The book contains a brief historical introduction to the Logbara people and their language. A short chapter on the sounds and intonation is included. The rest of the book is evenly divided between the grammar of Lugbara and a Lugbara-English vocabulary. In the grammar section, rules are stated, followed by numerous examples (with translations). Appendices on special aspects of the language follow as part of the grammatical description. The vocabulary includes examples of usage and items from many different dialects of the language. Paragraphs are numbered continuously and cross-referenced where necessary. Phonemic transcription used throughout based on the suggestions of the Rejaf Language Conference (1928).

MAMVU

GRAMMARS

Vorbichler, Anton. Die Sprache der Mamvu. (Afrikanistische Forschungen, Bd. 5) Glückstadt, W. Germany: J.J. Augustin, 1971. 356 pp.

Intended for the specialist. Description of phonology, tonology, morphology, morphophonology and morphotonology, and syntax. Texts with translation. Bibliography.

MANGBETU

GRAMMARS

Larochette, J. Grammaire des dialectes Mangbetu et Medje; suivie d'un manuel de conversation et d'un lexique. (Annales. Série in 8o. Sciences de l'Homme. Linguistique, Vol. 18) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1958.

Structural description. Deals with phonology, tonology, formatives, numerals, use of verbs, etc. The manual is in Mangbetu, Medje and French. Mangbetu texts. Two-way vocabulary. Notes on dialects.

Vekens, A. La Langue des Makere, des Medje, et des Mangbetu. (Bibliothèque congo, 25) Gent and Brussels, Belgium: Falk, Fils, 1928. 228 pp.

MAASAI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Shaffer, Ruth Thiers. Twelve lessons in Masai. N.p., The Author, 1967. 26 pp.

For self-instructional purposes. Intended to give speech and reading practice. Lessons include texts, grammatical analyses, and narratives (with literal translations).

READERS

Mpaayei, John Tompo Ole. Inkuti pukunot oo Lmaasai. Ed. by A.N. Tucker. (Annotated African texts, III: Maasai) London, England: Oxford University Press, 1954. xi, 74 pp.

GRAMMARS

Hollis, Alfred C. The Masai; their Language and Folklore. (The Black Heritage Library Collection) Freeport, NY: Books for Libraries Press, 1971. xxviii, 359 pp. [Reprint of London, 1905 ed.]

Grammar section primarily deals with parts of speech, with emphasis on verbs. Traditional in approach. Examples follow items described, often in paradigm form. Also included are Maasai stories, proverbs and sayings, enigmas, myths and traditions, customs and divisions of the Masai people. Numerous illustrations and photos.

Tucker, Archibald N. and J. Tompo Ole Mpaayei. A Maasai Grammar; with vocabulary. (African Institute, Leyden. Publications, no. 2) London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1955. 317 pp.

Traditional pedagogical grammar. In three parts: Part I deals with nouns, adjectives and pronouns; Part II, the verb system; Part III, notes on tonal grammar. Examples follow items described, often in paradigm form. Translation exercises with keys. Appendices include a Maasai text with a literal translation and notes and a Maasai-English vocabulary. Maps.

DICTIONARIES

Shaffer, Ruth Thiers. Maasai lexicon. N.p., The Authors, 1968. 28 pp.

Vocabulary based on i-stems, second part on non i-stems. Also included are topical vocabularies, a few proverbs and sayings, customs, Maasai nouns, and causative verbs.

MORU

GRAMMARS

Black, K. and K. Black. The Moro language. Grammar and dictionary. (Linguistic monograph series, no. 6) Khartoum, Sudan: University of Khartoum, Sudan Research Unit, Faculty of Arts, 1971. 179 pp.

Structural description. Part I deals with the phonemes of Moro. Part II is a grammatical outline of the basic constructions of the Umm Dorein dialect. Utilizes immediate constituent analysis. Part III is an English-Moro dictionary.

MUNDU

GRAMMARS

Santandrea, Stefano. Note grammaticale e lessicali sul gruppo feroge e sul mundu (Sudan). Naples, Italy: Istituto Universitario Orientale, 1969. 325 pp.

Vandame, Charles. Le Ngambay-Moundou. Phonologie, grammaire et textes. (Mémoires, No. 69) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Fondamentale d'Afrique Noire, 1963. xiii, 211 pp.

Structural description. Part I is on phonology.

Part II deals with grammar (classes of nominals and verbals, sentence, phrase). Part III contains texts (tales and myths). Phonological transcription. Interlinear literal translations, and approximate translations. Appended are an index of terminology, and an index of vocabulary.

MURLE

GRAMMARS

Lyth, R.E. A Murle grammar. (Linguistic monograph series, no. 7) Khartoum, Sudan: University of Khartoum, Sudan Research Unit, Faculty of Arts, 1971. 76, 109, 60 pp.
Contains grammar and vocabulary.

MUSEI

GRAMMARS

Platiel, Suzanne. Esquisse d'une étude du Musey. (Bulletin de la SELAF, 6) Paris, France: Société pour l'études des langues africaines, 1968. 98 pp.

NANDI (KALENJIN)

GRAMMARS

Bryson, S.M. Nandi Grammar with Sentences Showing the Various Parts of Speech. n.p., African Inland Mission, 1940. 78 pp.

Hollis, Alfred C. The Nandi. Their Language and Folklore. Ed. with a new introd. by G.W.B. Huntingford. Fair Lawn, NJ: Oxford University Press, 1969. xxxiii, 328 pp. [Also reprinted by Negro Universities Press, Westport, CT, 1971.] [Reprint of London, 1909 ed.]
Part I contains historical and cultural information, Nandi folktales, proverbs, and enigmas. Part II is a Nandi grammar. English-Nandi vocabulary. Appended are lists of Nandi trees, grass, etc., and the meaning of clan names. Index. Map.

Montgomery, Christine A. "The Morphology of Sebei." Ph.D. Diss., University of California at Los Angeles, 1966.

O'Brien, Richard J. and Wim A.M. Cuypers. A descriptive sketch of the grammar of Sebei. (Georgetown University Working Papers on Languages and Linguistics, No. 9) Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press, 1975. 190 pp.
A descriptive grammar, generative in approach. Examples follow the items described. Appendices include a pronunciation guide, Sebei texts, and a Sebei-English word list.

Tucker, A.N. "Kalenjin Phonetics." In In Honour of Daniel Jones. Ed. by David Abercrombie et al. London, England: Longmans, Green and Co., 1964. pp. 445-470.

_____. "The Paranilotic Languages." Linguistic Analyses: The Non-Bantu Languages of North Eastern Africa. London, England: International African Institute, 1966. pp. 443-494.
A brief description of the phonology and chief grammatical features of Nandi. Each feature, however, is compared with the other Paranilotic languages (Bari, Lotuho), Teso, and Maasai. Examples follow brief descriptions of items. Some cross-referencing. Bibliography.

_____ and M.A. Bryan. "Noun Classification in Kalenjin: Nandi-Kipsigis." African Language Studies 6.117-187 (1964).

_____. "Noun Classification in Kalenjin: Päkot." African Language Studies 3.137-181 (1962).

DICTIONARIES

Bryson, S.M. A Nandi-English Dictionary. 2nd ed. n.p., African Inland Mission, 1951.

Huntingford, George W.B. Nandi-English Vocabulary. London, England: University of London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1955. 87 pp.

NDOGO

GRAMMARS

Santandrea, Stefano. "The Birri Language; Brief Elementary Notes." Afrika und Überzee 49.81-105 (1966).
Phonetics, a small Birri vocabulary, vocabulary comparisons between Birri and other languages, and traditional grammatical outline.

NDUNGA

GRAMMARS

De Boeck, L.B. Grammaire du Mondunga (Lisala, Congo Belge). (Mémoires, 24, 2) Brussels, Belgium: Institut Royal Colonial Belge, Section de Sciences morales et politiques, 1952.

NUBIAN

TEACHING MATERIALS

Reinische, Leo. Die Nuba-Sprache. (Sprachen von Nord-Ost-Afrika, Bd. 2) Wiesbaden, W. Germany: Dr. Martin Sändig OHG, 1972. 2 vols. in 1. [Reprint of Vienna, 1879 ed.]
For self-instructional purposes. Designed to give reading and some speech practice. Vol. I is a grammar with texts for reading practice. Also included are sentences in the different dialects of Nubian. Vol. II is a Nubian-German dictionary, and a shorter German-Nubian dictionary. Entries in first section include grammatical information, levels of usage, and illustrative phrases and sentences. Cross references. Dialect marked for each entry known in both sections.

GRAMMARS

Armbruster, Carl H. Dongolese Nubian: A Grammar. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1968. 268 pp. [1st pub. 1960]
A reference grammar intended for the specialist. Structural in approach. In the introductory section, the author has a general discussion of Nubian, its dialects and relationship to other language families, as well as an historical outline. The rest of the book is divided into phonology; morphology and accidence, and syntax. Included in this part are formula for greeting and thanking, borrowing from Arabic, homophones,

fables and riddles. Numerous examples with translations follow items described. IPA-based transcription used throughout. Paragraphs are consecutively numbered and cross-referenced. English and Nubian indices. Bibliography.

Ayoub, Abd al-Rahman. The verbal system in a dialect of Nubian (being a description of the verbal function in the structures called "relatio" and "relatio adjunct") as spoken in the Halfa district. (Linguistic monograph series, no. 2) Khartoum, Sudan: University of Khartoum, Sudan Research Unit, Faculty of Arts, 1968.

Also includes conjugation tables of the verbal "kab" (to eat), an analyzed text, and 15 other texts with translation. Description includes numerous examples.

DICTIONARIES

Armbruster, Carl H. Dongolese Nubian, A Lexicon: Nubian-English, English-Nubian. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1965. xvi, 269 pp.

In the Nubian-English section, the words are arranged under headings. These headings are in the liaison form, with the pausal form, if it differs, added in a bracket. The liaison form gives the stem for declension of nouns, adjectives, pronouns and numerals. If a verb, the conjugation-stem form follows the heading. The English-Nubian section follows the customary alphabetical arrangement. Parts of speech and the etymology as well as illustrative sentences. References are made to the author's Dongolese Nubian: A Grammar. IPA-based transcription is used throughout.

NUER

GRAMMARS

Crazzolara, J.P. Outlines of a Nuer Grammar. Bibliothek linguistische Anthropos. Tome 13) Vienna, Austria: Verlag der Internationalen Zeitschrift "Anthropos", 1933. xii, 218 pp.

A descriptive grammar, traditional in approach. Numerous examples follow items described. Appended are Nuer texts accompanied by grammatical and ethnographical notes and free translations.

Westermann, D. "The Nuer Language." Sonderabdruck aus den Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen 15:3.48-141 (1912).

DICTIONARIES

Huffman, Ray. English-Nuer Dictionary. London, England: Oxford University Press, 1931. viii, 80 pp.

_____. Nuer-English Dictionary. Berlin, Germany: D. Reimer, 1929. 63 pp.

Concise dictionary. The singular form of nouns is first given, followed by the plural form, if known. Occasionally levels of usage, illustrative phrases and cultural information provided. Appended are brief grammatical notes.

Kiggen, J. Nuer-English Dictionary. Tegelen, Netherlands: Miniehaus, 1948. 346 pp.

Based on Thian dialect. Incorporates material collected by Crazzolara.

SANGO (NGBANDI)

TEACHING MATERIALS

Samarin, William J. Lessons in Sango. Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1967. 2 vols. Tapes. [ED 018 784]

Designed to give speech practice. The 25 lessons contain conversational material; the Reader annotated narratives. Both represent spontaneous speech. The grammar illustrated in the dialogues is ungraded. There are pronunciation, substitution, response, and transformation drills. Structured conversation is outlined in English and based on dialogues and narratives. Culture notes. Vocabulary usage is explained in notes and illustrated in sentences. The narratives in the Reader are followed by questions and model sentences. Sango material is in transcription. Selected bibliography. Grammar index. [NDEA]

READERS

Samarin, William J. Readings in Sango, Parts I-III. Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1965. 3 vols. [ED 010 326/327/328]

Prepared with the Peace Corps Volunteer in mind. Readings prepared from tape recordings, designed to represent a wide range in speakers, as well as to provide interesting cultural content. [NDEA]

GRAMMARS

Samarin, William J. A Grammar of Sango. (Janua Linguarum. Series Practica, 38) The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton and Co., 1967. 284 pp. [ED 003 925, 1963 ed.]

A descriptive grammar, intended for the specialist. Structural in approach. In five parts: phonology; word classes, construction classes, texts (includes one analyzed narrative text and several unanalyzed readings with translations), and Sango-English, English-Sango lexicons. Numerous examples, with translations, follow items described. Phonemic transcription used throughout. Index of examples and subject index. Bibliography. [NDEA]

_____. Sango; langue de l'Afrique Centrale. Leiden, Netherlands: E.J. Brill, 1970. 146 pp.

Structural description. Intended also for reference purposes. Deals with grammatical categories. Texts with translations. Subject index.

Taber, Charles R. The structure of Sango narrative, Parts I & II. (Hartford Studies in Linguistics, no. 17) Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1966. 2 vols.

Deals primarily with discourse structure. Based on a stratificational model. Eight texts analyzed at the sememic, lexemic, and morphemic strata respectively. Appendix includes the corpus with translations with interlinear literal and approximate translations. Bibliography.

DICTIONARIES

Calloc'h, J. Vocabulaire français-sango et sango-français (langue commerciale de l'Oubangi-Chari). Paris, France: P. Geuthner, 1911. viii, 86 pp.

Includes grammatical sketch.

Lekens, Benjamin. Dictionnaire Ngbandi (Ubangi-Congo Belge): Français-Ngbandi, Ngbandi-Français. (Annales. Sciences de l'Homme. Linguistique, Vol. 1) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1952. 348 pp.

Intended for speakers of both languages. Entries include levels of usage, and numerous illustrative sentences. Parts of speech occasionally indicated.

_____. Ngbandi-idiotico, I & II. (Annales. Série in 8°. Sciences de l'Homme Linguistique, Vol. 3, Tome 1, 2) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, 1955-58. 2 vols.

Vol. I is Dutch-French and Ngbandi. Vol. II is Ngbandi and French-Dutch.

Taber, Charles R. Dictionary of Sango. Hartford, CT: Hartford Seminary Foundation, 1965. xxi, 337 pp. [ED 010 346]

A companion volume to Samarin, A Grammar of Sango. The approximately 4000 entries are arranged according to the phonemic orthography established by Samarin. French entries are in the French spelling and in transcription. Entries whose pronunciation could not be verified lack tone marks. Illustrative sentences and cross-references to synonyms and to related words. Brief ethnographic essays in encyclopedic style. [NDEA]

Tisserant, Charles. Sango. Langue véhiculaire de l'Oubangui-Chari. Issy, France: Les Presses Universitaires, 1950. 271 pp.

Sango-French, French-Sango dictionary. In the first part entries include parts of speech and levels of usage; in the second part, illustrative phrases and sentences also. A grammatical outline precedes the dictionary.

SARA-GAMBAI

TEACHING MATERIALS

Thayer, James E. and Julien Maraby. Sara Basic Course. Prelim. ed. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, Intensive Language Training Center, 1966. 86 pp. [Limited ed.]

Designed to give speech practice. May be covered in approximately 50 hours. Microwave format. Grammar is illustrated in repetition and response drills and included in dialogues. [PC]

_____. Sara Intermediate Course. Prelim. ed. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, Intensive Language Training Center, 1966. 2 vols. in 1. Tapes. [Also available in French translation.] [Limited ed.]

May be used for self-instructional purposes. Vol. I contains 40 texts on various cultural subjects. Included also are dialogues for conversation practice based on the texts. Vol. II contains English translations to the text. [PC]

Thayer, Linda J. and James E. Thayer. 50 lessons in Sara-Ngambay, a language of Southern Chad. Prelim. ed. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University, Intensive Language Center, 1971. 3 vols. Tapes. [ED 051 723/721/724]

Designed to give speech practice. Lessons 1-30 are for the beginning student, and Lessons 31-50 designed to bring him or her up to the intermediate level. Lessons typically include dialogues, grammar notes, and cultural information. All explanatory material and translations are in English and French. Vol. III contains a grammatical outline in terms of structures, forms, and processes. Appendices include a subject index, an extensive glossary, a bibliography, and maps. [NDEA]

GRAMMARS

Vandame, Charles. Le ngambay-moundou: phonologie, grammaire et textes. (Mémoires, No. 69) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, 1963. xii, 211 pp.

A descriptive grammar, intended for the specialist. Based on linguistic principles as developed by Martinet. In three parts: phonology; grammar (nominals, verbals, propositional sentence types, the phrase/clause); texts (stories and poems), with translations, two of which have literal translations provided. Numerous examples follow items described. Some diachronic information provided. Phonemic transcription used throughout. Subject index and vocabulary index. Map.

SARA-MAJINGAI

DICTIONARIES

Hallaire, Jacques and Jean Robinne. Dictionnaire sara-français. Koumra-Fourrière, Chad, 1955-59. [Mimeo.] 429 pp.

SARA-MBAY

GRAMMARS

Caprile, Jean-Pierre. Essai de phonologie d'un parler mbay. Les emprunts arabes en mbay. (Bulletin de la Société pour l'Étude des Langues Africaines Français, 8) Paris, France: C. Klincksieck, 1968. 51 pp.

Fortier, Joseph. Grammaire mbaye-moïssala (Tchad-groupe Sara). (Documents, no. 6) Lyon, France: Afrique et langage, 1971. 112 pp.

Descriptive study, primarily intended for the person who knows some linguistics. Brief description of phonology. Chapter 1 is on predicates with or without verbs. Chapters 2-4 deal with nominals, Chapter 5 is on the verb, and Chapters 6-7 describe syntactic functions.

DICTIONARIES

Caprile, Jean-Pierre. Lexique mbai-français. (Série Document, No. 3. Afrique et langage, 4) Lyon, France: Afrique et langage, 1969. vi, 65 pp.

Notes problematic forms.

Fortier, Joseph. Dictionnaire mbay-français. Fort-Archambault, Chad: Author, 1961. 217 pp.

Mbay entries are followed by glosses or explanations. Entries also include parts of speech, usage, and illustrative sentences. Grammatical outline precedes dictionary.

SHILLUK

GRAMMARS

Kohnen, B. Shilluk Grammar with a Little English-Shilluk Dictionary. Verona, Italy: Missioni Africane, 1938. xvi, 320 pp.

Westermann, Diedrich. The Shilluk People. Their Language and Folklore. Westport, CT: Negro Universities Press, 1971. lxiii, 312 pp. [Reprint of Philadelphia, 1912 ed.]

Introduction includes historical, political, and cultural information. Part I is a traditional grammar dealing with phonology, the parts of speech, and diachronic information about Shilluk. Part II contains texts, with translations, covering a wide variety of subjects. A few notes. Part III is a Shilluk-English, English-Shilluk dictionary. Map.

_____. A Short Grammar of the Shilluk Language. Philadelphia, PA: The Board of Foreign Missions of the United Presbyterian Church of North America. Printed by D. Reimer, Berlin, Germany, 1912. v, 76 pp.

TEDA (TUDA)

GRAMMARS

LeCoeur, Charles and M. LeCoeur. Grammaire et textes teda-daza. (Mémoires, No. 46) Dakar, Senegal: Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, 1956. 394 pp.

A descriptive grammar, intended for the specialist. Based on linguistic principles as developed by Martinet. In three parts: grammar, which includes a brief introduction to articulation, morphology, and syntax. Appended to this section are two chapters on word formation. The last chapter is given over to some aspects of the syntax of Teda. Examples with translations follow items described. Part II is a series of texts on various subjects including some poems. Interlinear literal and approximate translations provided. Part III is a French-Teda lexicon. The different forms of Teda words are given in the Teda column. Phonemic transcription used throughout. Grammatical index. Map.

DICTIONARIES

LeCoeur, Charles. Dictionnaire éthnographique téda. Précédé d'un lexique français-téda. (Mémoires de l'Institut Français d'Afrique Noire, No. 9) Paris, France: Librairie Larose, 1950. 211 pp.

TESO

TEACHING MATERIALS

Hilders, J.H. and J.C.D. Lawrance. An Introduction to the Ateso Language. Kampala, Uganda: Eagle Press, 1957. xxiv, 89 pp.

For Ugandan students taking the lower Standard language examination. In the 19 lessons, grammar is explained in traditional terms and illustrated in unrelated sentences. Translation exercises. Vocabulary lists. Introduction contains a brief guide to pronunciation and orthography. Appendices cover the tenses of the verb, verb derivation, sample exams, and key to exercises.

Kitching, Arthur L. A Handbook of the Ateso Language. London, England: Society for Promoting Christian Knowledge, 1915. ix, 144 pp.

GRAMMARS

Kiggen, J. Grammar Nak' Ateso. Ngora, Tanzania: Tanganyika Mission Press, 1928.

DICTIONARIES

Hilders, J.H. and J.C.D. Lawrance. An English-Ateso and Ateso-English Vocabulary. Nairobi, Kenya: Eagle Press, 1958. xv, 58 pp.

Intended for speakers of both languages. Assumes a knowledge of the grammar of Ateso. In the English-Ateso sections, the entries, approximately 4700 words, include grammatical information. In the Ateso-English section, abbreviations indicate the parts of speech.

Kiggen, J. English-Ateso Dictionary. Ngora, Tanganyika [Tanzania]: Tanganyika Mission Press, 1953.

TUMAK

DICTIONARIES

Caprile, Jean-Pierre. Lexique Tumak-Français. (Tchad). (Marburger Studien zur Afrika- und Asienkunde, Ser. A, Bd. 5) Marburg, W. Germany, 1975. 135 pp.

UDUK

DICTIONARIES

Beam, Mary S. and A. Elizabeth Cridland. Uduk-English dictionary. (Linguistic monograph series, no. 4) Khartoum, Sudan: University of Khartoum, Sudan Research Unit, Faculty of Arts, 1970. 183 pp. [1st pub. 1956]

Entries include parts of speech, levels of usage (occasionally), grammatical information, and illustrative phrases and sentences.

ZANDE

TEACHING MATERIALS

Lagae, C.R. and V.H. Van den Plas. La langue des azande: grammaire, exercices, légendes. Dictionnaire français-zande/Dictionnaire zande-français. (Bibliothèque Congo, Nos. 6-8) Gent, Belgium: Veritas, 1921-25. 3 vols.

READERS

Gore, Edward C. Pa rika na Azande: Zande fables. London, England: Sheldon Press, 1931.

GRAMMARS

Gore, Edward C. A Zande grammar. London, England: Sheldon Press, 1931.

Tucker, A.N. and P.E. Hackett. Le groupe linguistique zande. (Annales. Sciences de l'Homme. Linguistique. Sér. in 8o, No. 22) Tervuren, Belgium: Musée Royal du Congo Belge, Commission de Linguistique Africaine, 1959. 286 pp.

Part I is on phonetics, tones, and orthography. Part II contains brief outlines of zande and nzakara, barabu, and pambia languages, with some examples provided. Part III is a comparative vocabulary of the three types of languages. Appended is subject index.

DICTIONARIES

Gore, Edward C. Zande and English Dictionary. Rev.

ed., by H.B. Bullen. London, England: Sheldon Press, 1952. vii, 288 pp. [1st pub. 1931]

Zande-English, English-Zande dictionary. Entries include parts of speech, levels of usage, illustrative phrases, and variant spellings.

Malayo Polynesian

MALAGASY

TEACHING MATERIALS

Garvey, Catherine J. et al. Malagasy Introductory Course. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1964. xv, 233 pp. [ED 010 482]

Designed to give speech practice. A minimum of four classroom hours per day is suggested. Of the 26 lessons, Lessons 12 and 19 are reviews which include structured conversations based on earlier dialogues. Dialogues and narratives with buildups are followed by grammatical explanations in structural terms. There are pronunciation, translation, repetition, response, substitution, transformation, and expansion drills. Lessons 16-26 include information about sound changes occurring in the composition of words, derivation, and reduplication. Malagasy material is in the standard orthography modified by diacritics to indicate stress. The dialect used is of the Merina area. Culture notes are included. [NDEA]

Rahajarizafy, Antoine. Initiation à la langue malgache. Anatananarivo, Malagasy Rep.: Scolasticat St. Paul, 1969. 3 parts in 2 vols.

Rajaobelina, Prosper. "Parler Malgache"; methode pour apprendre le malgache usuel en quarante leçons avec un précis de grammaire et des exercices de tradition. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: l'Imp. Lutherienne Antsahamanitra, 1966. 95 pp. [1st pub. 1958]

_____. Parler malgache en 40 leçons pour débutants, à l'usage des Français. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep., 1960. 79 pp.

Razafindrabe, Michel. Malagasy audio-visuel. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: Imp. Fanontam-Boky Malagasy, 1972. 138 pp.

Grammar and vocabulary. Text in Malagasy, English, and French.

Stark, Elsie L. Malagasy without moans; a first course in the Malagasy language for English-speaking students. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: Trano Printy Loterana, 1969. 128 pp.

READERS

Rajaobelina, Prosper, comp. Lahatsorata voa fantina. Fanazavan-teny nataon'i Jonah Gabriel. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: Éditions Rajaobelina frères, 1949. 184 pp.

GRAMMARS

Foublée, Jacques. Abrégé de langue malgache. Paris, France: C. Klincksieck, 1954. 72 pp.

Garvey, Catherine J. A Sketch of Malagasy Grammar. Washington, DC: Center for Applied Linguistics, 1964. 82 pp. [ED 010 483]

A descriptive grammar, intended for the specialist. Structural in approach. In three parts: phonology, morphology, and syntax. Included in syntax section is a brief sample analysis of a sentence. Examples with translations follow items described. Phonemic transcription used throughout. Analysis is based on the speech of residents of the Merina area. [NDEA]

Malzac, V. Grammaire malgache. 4th ed. Paris, France: Société d'éditions géographiques, maritimes et coloniales, 1960. xxii, 204 pp. [3rd ed., 1950]

Grammaire malgache, tome 1-3. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: École Secondaire du Sacré-Coeur, 1969. 3 vols.

Rabenilaina, Roger B. Description morpho-syntaxique du Bara (Madagascar). Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: Foibe Filan-kevitry ny Mpampianatra, 1975. 2 vols.

Description of the southern dialect of Malagasy. Vol. I contains description; Vol. II is the corpus. Bibliography.

Rajemisa-Raolison, Régis. Fitsipi-piterenama Malagasy; dingana faharoa, cours moyen. 2nd ed. Fianarantsoa, Malagasy Rep.: Lib. Ambozontany, 1968. 143 pp.

_____. Grammaire malgache. Enseignement secondaire, 6ème-3ème, enseignement général. 5th ed. Fianarantsoa, Malagasy Rep., 1966. 174 pp.

DICTIONARIES

Abinal, Antoine and V. Malzac. Dictionnaire malgache-français. Paris, France: Éditions Maritimes et Coloniales, 1963. xv, 876 pp. [Previous editions]

Diksionera, Malagasy-English: misy teny 7,000 voalahatra araka ny abidy. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: Trano Printy Loterana, 1973. 103 pp.

An elementary English-Malagasy dictionary; containing the 10,000 words most used in modern English. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: Andro Vaovao & Trano Printy Loterana, 1970. 118 pp.

Korneev, Lev Aleksandrovič. Malgašsko-russkij slovar': Malagasy-Russian Dictionary. Moscow, USSR: "Sovetskaja Enciklopedija," 1966. 646 pp.

Alternate spellings are given for the main entries. Primary and secondary meanings are listed and there are illustrative phrases. Includes new sources from Malagasy literature and newspapers.

_____. Russko-malagarsijskij slovar'. Moscow, USSR: "Sovetskaja Enciklopedija", 1970. 543 pp.

Contains approximately 24,000 words.

Malzac, V. Dictionnaire français-malgache. Nouv. éd. Paris, France: Éditions Maritimes et Coloniales, 1963. xv, 860 pp. [Reprint of 1926 ed.]

A comprehensive dictionary primarily intended for the French speaker. Presupposes mastery of the grammar of Malagasy. Parts of speech and illustrative sentences. The dialect of Tananarive is represented.

Paginton, Kenneth. English-Malagasy vocabulary. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: Trano Printy Loterana, 1970. 193 pp.

Profita, Pietro. Rakibolana Malagasy-Italianina. Dizionario italiano-malgascio. Tananarive, Malagasy Republic, 1969. 729 pp.

Richardson, James. A new Malagasy-English dictionary. Westmead, Farnborough, England: Gregg International Publishers, 1967. lix, 832 pp. [Reprint of Tananarive, 1885 ed.]

Based on the Merina area dialect. Entries also include information on other dialects. Grammatical outline.

Sims, John and J.C. Kingzett. Dictionnaire Français-Malgache. 5th ed. Tananarive, Malagasy Rep.: Trano Printy Loterana, 1970. 365 pp.

Vocabulaire français-malgache. Nouv. éd., rev. corr. et augm. d'un précis de grammaire malgache. Paris, France: Éditions maritimes et d'outre-mer, 1967. xiv, 446 pp.

Index

Abua 6
Ac(h)(o)oli: see Acoli
Acoli 62
Adangme: see Gã
Adja: see Ewe-Fon
Afrikaans 1
Ahizi 7
Akan 7
Akuapem: see Akan
Alur: see Acoli
Amhara: see Amharic
Amharic 2
Angas(s) 8
Anufo 8
Anyi 8
As(h)ante: see Akan
Asu: see Shambala
Ateso: see Teso
Azande: see Zande
Badiaranke: see Pajade
Badjaaranké: see Pajade
Bafia: see Kpa
Bagirmi 63
Balanta 8
Balante: see Balanta
Bambara: see Mandekan
Bam(o)um 33
Banda 63
Banen: see Basa
Bangi 33
Bantu Kavirondo: see Luhya
Baoulé: see Baule
Bari 63
Basa: see Duala
Basaá: see Duala
Bassa 8
Baule 9
Bekwarra 9
Bekworra: see Bekwarra
Bemba 34
Benin: see Edo
Berti 63
Bimoba: see Moba
Bini: see Edo
Birom 9
Birri: see Ndogo
Bisa 9
Black Bobo 10

Bobangi: see Bangi

Bobo: see Black Bobo
see Red Bobo

Bobo-oule: see Red Bobo

Boma: see Teke

Bongo 63

Bozo: see Soninke

Bulom 10

Bulu: see Fang-Bulu

Buluba: see Luba

Buma: see Teke

Busa: see Bisa

Bushman 62

Bwa 34

Bwamu: see Red Bobo

Chagga: see Shaka

Chakosi: see Anufo

Chasu: see Shambala

Chewa: see Nyanja

Chi: (see next letter of name sought)

Chokosi: see Anufo

Chokwe 34

Chope: see shiChopi

shiChopi 35

Chuana: see Sotho, Tswana

Chwee: see Akan

Ci: (see next letter of name sought)

Cokwe: see Chokwe

Crioulo: see Western Europe and Pidgins and Creoles fascicle

Dagara 63

Daga(a)ri 10

Dagbani: see Dagomba

Dagomba 10

Dan 10

Dangaleat 63

Daza: see Teda

Dciriku: see Kwangali

Degara: see Dagara

Dendi: see Songhai

Dho-Alur: see Acoli

Dho-Luo: see Acoli

Dinka 63

Diola: see Dyola

Dioula: see Mandekan

Djaga: see Shaka

Djerma: see Songhai

Dogon 11

Douala: see Duala

Duala 35

Duka 11

Dyabo: see Baule

Dyola 11

Dyula: see Mandekan

Ebira: see Igbirra

Edo 11

Efik 11

Élé: see Lela

Emakua: see Makua

Engenni 12

Ewe-Fon 12

Ewondo: see Fang-Bulu

Fãñ: see Fang-Bulu

Fanagalo: see Zulu-Xhosa, Fanagalo

Fanakalo: see Zulu-Xhosa, Fanagalo

Fang-Bulu 36

Fante: see Akan

Fanti: see Akan

Fe'fe' 37

Fogny: see Dyola

Fon: see Ewe-Fon

Foulbé: see Fulani
Foulfouldé: see Fulani
Fouta: see Fulani
Ful: see Fulani
Fula: see Fulani
Fulani 13
Fulbe: see Fulani
Fulfulde: see Fulani
Fur 64
Gã 15
G(a)'anda 15
Gabin: see Ga'anda
Galla 4
Ganda 37
Ganja: see Balanta
Gbandi: see Sango
Gbari 15
Gbaya: see Gbeya
Gbeya 64
Gio: see Dan
Gisiga 16
Gitonga: see shiChopi
Giur: see Acoli
Glavdâ: see Mandara
Golo: see Gula
Gonja: see Guang
Gourma: see Gurma
Gourmantché: see Gurma
Gouro: see Kweni
Grebo 16
Grusi: see Kasena
see Lela
Guang 16
Guerzé: see Kpelle
Gula 64
Gurenne: see Nakanse
Gurma 16
Gusii 38
Gwari: see Gbari
Hausa 16
Haya: see Nyoro
Hottentot 61
Ibibio: see Efik
Ibo: see Igbo
Idoma 19
Igbirra 19
Igbo 19
Ijaw 20
Ika 21
Ila: see chiTonga
Inhambane: see shiChopi
Ippy: see Banda
Iro: see Gula
Isaalang: see Sisala
Izi 21
Jukun 21
Kaffir: see Zulu-Xhosa, Xhosa
Kalenjin: see Nandi
Kamba 38
Kan(o)uri 21
Kaonde: see Luba
Kapsiki 22
Kara 64
Karanga: see Shona
Ka(s)sena 22
Kassem: see Kasena
Kavirondo: see Luhya
Kefa-Mocha 4
Kenga 64
Ki: (see next letter of name sought)

Kiga: see Nyankore
Kikuyu 38
Kimbundu: see (Ki)Mbundu (Ndongo)
Kiniassa: see Mpota
Kinyarwanda: see Rwanda
Kituba: see Kongo
Kiyomba: see Kongo
Kolokuma: see Igbo
Kololo: see Lozi
Kongo 39
Konkomba 22
Kotoko 64
Kpa 40
Kpelle 22
Krio: see Western Europe/Pidgins and Creoles fascicle
Kru: see Bassa
Kuanyama 40
Kŭlâál: see Gula
!Kung: see Bushman
Kusa(a)l(e) 22
Kusasi: see Kusal
Kwangali 41
Kwanyama: see Kuanyama
Kweni 22
Lala: see Bemba
Lamba: see Bemba
Lebeo: see Bwa
Lefana 22
ekiLega 41
Lela 23
Lel(l)emi: see Lefana
Lenge: see shiChopi
Limba 23
Linda: see Banda
Lingala: see Ngala
Lingombe: see Ngombe
Lobi 23
Logbara: see Lugbara
Loghoma: see Loma
Loko 23
Loma 23
Lomongo: see Mongo
Lonkundo: see Mongo
Lotuho: see Lotuxo
Lotuko: see Lotuxo
Lotuxo 64
Lozi 41
Lu: (see next letter of name sought)
Luba 41
Luganda: see Ganda
Lugbara 65
Luhya 42
Lulua: see Luba
Lunda 42
Lunyoro: see Nyoro
Luo: see Acoli
Luvale: see Chokwe
Luy(i)ana 42
Luyia: see Luhya
Lwo(o): see Acoli
Ma'di: see Lugbara
Makere: see Mangbetu
Makonde 42
Makua 42
Malagasy 70
Malgache: see Malagasy
Malinké: see Mandekan
Mambila 23
Mamvu 65

Mamvu: see Mamvu

Mandara 23

Mandekan 23

Mandingo: see Mandekan

Mandingue: see Mandekan

Mandinka: see Mandekan

Mang'anja: see Nyanja

Mangbetu 65

Maninka: see Mandekan

Mano 25

Manyika: see Shona

Margi 25

Ma(a)sai 65

Mawiha: see Makonde

Mbai: see Sara-Mbay

Mbala: see Kongo

Mbay: see Sara-Mbay

Mbembe 25

Mbum 25

[Ki]Mbundu (Ndongo) 43

[U]Mbundu 43

Medje: see Mangbetu

Mende 25

Mina: see Ewe-Fon

Minianka: see Senari

Moba 26

Mocha: see Kefa-Mocha

Moïssala: see Sara-Mbay

Mondunga: see Ndunga

Mongo 43

Mo(o)ré 26

Moro: see Moru

Moru 65

Mossi: see Moré

chiMpoto 44

Mundu 65

Murle 66

Musei 66

Musey: see Musei

Mussele: see [U]Mbundu

Mwera: see Makonde

Nakanse 27

Nama: see Hottentot

Nande 44

Nandi 66

Nandi-Kipsigis: see Nandi

Ndebele: see Zulu-Xhosa, Ndebele

Ndogo 66

Ndongo: see [Ki]Mbundu

Ndumu 44

Ndunga 66

Nembe: see Ijaw

Ngala 44

Ngambay: see Sara-Gambai

Ngbaka: see Gbeya

Ngbandi: see Sango

Ngombe 45

Nguni: see Zulu-Xhosa

Ngwe 45

Nhaneca: see Nyaneka

Niassa: see Nyanja

Nkonya: see Guang

Nkundu: see Mongo

Northern Suthu: see Sotho, Pedi

chiNsenga 45

Ntandu: see Kongo

Ntomba: see Mongo

Nubian 66

Nuer 67

Nupe 27

Nyamwezi: see Sukuma
Nyaneka 45
Nyanja 45
Nyankore: see Nyoro
Nyoro 46
Nzema: see Anyi
Nzima: see Anyi
Olof: see Wolof
Oluganda: see Ganda
Oluluyia: see Luhya
Oromo: see Galla
Oshikuanyama: see Kuanyama
Ovambo: see Kuanyama
Pajade 27
Päkot: see Nandi
Pamue: see Fang-Bulu
Pare: see Shambala
Pedi: see Sotho, Pedi
Pende: see Kongo
Peul: see Fulani
Quimbundo: see [Ki]Mbundu
Quioca: see Chokwe
Red Bobo 27
Rimi: see kinyaTuru
Ron 28
Ronga: see Tsonga
Ru: (see next letter of name sought)
Rukiga: see Nyankore
Rundi 47
Runyankore: see Nyoro
Runyarwanda: see Rwanda
Rwanda 47
Sango 67
Santa: see Dan
Sara-Gambai 68
Sara-Majingai 68
Sara-Mbay 68
Sebei: see Nandi
Sechuana: see Sotho, Tswana
Secwana: see Sotho, Tswana
Sembla 28
chiSena 48
Senari 28
Sen(o)ufo: see Senari
see Suppire
Sepedi: see Sotho, Pedi
Serer 28
Sérère: see Serer
Sesotho: see Sotho, (Southern) Sotho
Sesutu: see Sotho, (Southern) Sotho
Setswana: see Sotho, Tswana
Shaka 48
Shambala 48
Shangaan: see Tsonga
Sherbro: see Bulom
Shilluk 68
Shona 48
Siga: see Berbi
Sikololo: see Lozi
Sipedi: see Sotho, Pedi
Sisala 28
Somali 5
Soñay: see Songhai
Songhai 28
Soninke 29
Sonrai: see Songhai
Sotho,
Pedi (Northern Sotho) 49
(Southern) Sotho 50
Tswana 51
Soussou: see Susu

Southern Sotho: see Sotho, (Southern) Sotho
Sukuma 51
Sup'ide: see Suppire
Suppire 29
Susu 29
Sutu: see Sotho, (Southern) Sotho
see Sotho, Pedi
Swahili 52
Swati: see Zulu-Xhosa, Swati
Swazi: see Zulu-Xhosa, Swati
Tamprusi 29
Tampulma: see Tamprusi
Teda 69
Teke 56
Temne 29
Tera 30
Teso 69
Tetela: see Mongo
Thonga: see Tsonga
Tigrai: see Tigrinya
Tigray: see Tigrinya
Tigre 6
Tigrinya 6
Tikar 56
Timne: see Temne
Tiv 30
chiTonga: see also shiChopi 56
Tooro: see Nyoro
Toura: see Tura
Tɔ̀ro: see Dogon
Ts(h)i: see Akan
Tshiluba: see Luba
Tshivenda: see Venda
Tsonga 56
Tswa: see Tsonga
Tswana: see Sotho, Tswana
Tuba: see Kongo
Tuda: see Teda
Tumak 69
Tumbuka 57
Tùnɛn: see Duala
Tura 31
kinyaTuru 58
Twi: see Akan
Ubangi: see Sango
Uduk 69
Ukwɥanì: see Ika
Umbundu: see [U]Mbundu
Vagala 31
Vai 31
Vei: see Vai
Venda 58
Volof: see Wolof
West African Pidgin: see Western Europe/Pidgins and Creoles fascicle
Wisa: see Bemba
Wolof 31
Xhosa: see Zulu-Xhosa, Xhosa
Xilenge: see shiChopi
Xironga: see Tsonga
!Xũ: see Bushman
Yaka: see Kongo
[Ki]Yao 58
Yaunde: see Fang-Bulu
Yom 32
Yombe: see Tsonga
Yoruba 32
Zande 69
Zerma: see Songhai
Zulu-Xhosa (Nguni),

Fanagalo 58
Ndebele 58
Swati 58
Xhosa 59
Zulu 60

Zulu: see Zulu-Xhosa, Zulu

THANK YOU!

..... for sending us information about basic tools of access which do not appear in this survey, including those under preparation, which you feel should be considered for inclusion in a subsequent edition. We will appreciate your using the following form(s) to give us as complete information as possible:

Books:

Author(s) or Editor(s)_____

Complete Title_____

Publisher_____

Place of Publication_____ Date_____

Number of Pages_____ Price_____

Series Title and Volume (if any)_____

Edition: Preliminary__, First__, Second__, Other__, Reprint__, Mimeo__, Ditto__.

Journal Entries:

Author(s)_____

Complete Title_____

Name of Journal_____

Place of Publication_____

Vol. No._____ Part_____ Date_____ Page Nos._____

_____.

Dissertations:

Author(s)_____

Title_____

Name of University_____

Date_____ No. pages_____

University Microfilm No._____

Name_____
(please print)

Institution_____

Department_____

Address_____

_____ Date_____

Mail to: Center for Applied Linguistics, Dept. INT/SUTL, 1611 N. Kent St., Arlington, VA 22209